Pathway to Arabic Grammar

VOLUME 1

Dr. Ikramullah Ahmed

Editors: Dr. Shabbir Ahmed & Mufti Abdul Wahab Hassan

© 2026 Qubaa Association of Western Sydney

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, distributed, or transmitted in any form or by any means, including photocopying, recording, or other electronic or mechanical methods, without the prior written permission of the publisher.

To request permission, contact: info@masjidqubaa.org.au

Author: Dr. Ikramullah Ahmed

Editors: Dr. Shabbir Ahmed & Mufti Abdul Wahab Hassan

Publisher: Qubaa Association of Western Sydney

19 Sunblest Cres, Mount Druitt NSW 2770

www.masjidqubaa.org.au

ISBN: 978-0-646-72758-5

ABOUT THE AUTHOR

Dr. Ikramullah Ahmed is an accomplished scholar and teacher in the field of Islamic studies. He holds a diverse range of educational qualifications that reflect his deep commitment to Islamic knowledge and the Arabic language. Dr. Ikramullah completed an '*Ālim* course (*Sharīʿah*) in 2010 at Darul-Uloom College in Fakwner, Victoria, which provided him with a strong foundation in Islamic knowledge. He obtained a Bachelor of Islamic Revealed Knowledge and Heritage (Honours), with a major in Qur'ān & Sunnah, from the esteemed International Islamic University Malaysia in 2015.

His passion for the Arabic language led him to pursue a Master of Arts in Classical Arabic from Charles Sturt University, where he graduated from in 2018. In 2020, Dr. Ikramullah embarked on his PhD journey, researching the topic of moonsighting issues in Australia. He successfully completed and submitted his thesis and was awarded his PhD in 2025.

Dr. Ikramullah's commitment to Islamic education and the Arabic language extends beyond academia. Since 2016, he has actively been a part of the Arabic department at Western Grammar School (Sydney), where he has taught and written Arabic textbooks for the school. He is the author of the Arabic textbook series titled 'Pathway to Understanding the Qur'ān,' a collection of six Arabic textbooks (two more books to complete the series) designed for students ranging from primary to high school. These books are currently part of the curriculum and are being taught across these educational levels.

He is also a teacher at Madrasah Qubaa in Mount Druitt (Sydney). In this role, he excels as a Qur'ān (*Ḥifth*) teacher, imparting the sacred knowledge of the Qur'ān to students. Additionally, Dr. Ikramullah serves as an Advanced Arabic grammar teacher and an assistant Imam. He is also a registered Minister of Religion, NSW Justice of the Peace and a Marriage Celebrant.

INTRODUCTION

There is no doubt that the authentic language of Arabic was chosen and accepted as the primary medium for Allāh's Final Revelation to all of mankind. Thus, there can be no denying that the Arabic language holds an utterly crucial position for every Muslim to learn and understand. Allāh ﷻ could have revealed the Noble Qur'ān in any other language, or even in every language, yet He chose Arabic alone. As He declares in the Holy Qur'ān:

{إِنَّآ أَنزَلْنَاهُ قُرْاٰنًا عَرَبِيًّا لَّعَلَّكُمْ تَعْقِلُوْنَ}

"Indeed, We have sent it down as an Arabic Qur'ān, so that you may understand". (Sūrah Yūsuf: 2)

This verse clearly emphasises that every Muslim should take the initiative to learn Arabic—not merely to recite, but to truly comprehend and reflect upon the meanings of Allāh's Words. It also highlights that the Arabic language possesses a unique structure and beauty that render it superior to all other languages of the world. The profound depth, precision, and eloquence of Arabic allow it to convey the intricacies and subtleties of Divine Speech in a way no other language can. It is Allāh ﷻ Himself who has endowed Arabic with these remarkable qualities and elevated it above all other tongues.

The Arabic language is remarkably rich, built upon an intricate system of grammar (اَلنَّحْوُ) and morphology (اَلصَّرْفُ). Classical scholars treated these two branches as distinct sciences due to their depth and vastness - each deserving of dedicated study and mastery.

This book aims to present all the essential topics from both fields in a simplified and structured manner, ensuring that students gain a strong foundational understanding of the language of the Qur'ān. Every effort has been made to cover the key rules and principles required for a comprehensive grasp of Arabic; however, a few rare and seldom-used topics have been intentionally omitted for the sake of clarity and focus.

Moreover, this book seeks to simplify and summarise the grammatical and morphological discussions found in the classical works of Arabic grammar, making them accessible to students of all levels. Students are encouraged to test their knowledge of the topics learned by attempting the exercises found in *Lisān al-Qur'ān*, which contains extensive and varied exercises across all three volumes, along with a comprehensive vocabulary list. In contrast, the exercises in this book have been kept brief and concise for the sake of revision and concept reinforcement.

LINGUISTIC AND WRITING NOTES

The Arabic writing style used in this book varies slightly from that found in other works on Arabic grammar. The style adopted for normal Arabic words and sentences differs from the style used for Qurʾānic verses within this book. The following conventions have been applied throughout:

1) All Arabic words that contain *hamzatul-qaṭʿ* (هَمْزَةُ الْقَطْعِ) have the *hamzah* symbol written on the *alif* (أ), whether the word is a noun, verb, or particle. For *hamzatul-waṣl* (هَمْزَةُ الْوَصْلِ), the *hamzah* symbol is not written. All words, whether beginning with هَمْزَةُ الْقَطْعِ or هَمْزَةُ الْوَصْلِ, have a *fatḥah* placed at the beginning to indicate the correct pronunciation for students.
2) Words ending with an *alif maqṣūrah* are written with a dagger *alif* - commonly known in the subcontinent as *kharā zabar*, or *fatḥah madd* in Arabic usage.
3) The first appearance of any Arabic word in this book includes full *ḥarakāt*, including the vowel sign on the final letter, whether it ends with *fatḥah* (ـَ), *kasrah* (ـِ), or *ḍammah* (ـُ). In subsequent occurrences of the same word, the final *ḥarakah* is intentionally omitted for readability and to avoid visual repetition.
4) All Qurʾānic verses in this book include the complete set of *madd* symbols and dagger *alifs* exactly as found in the 13-line South African and subcontinent prints of the *Muṣḥaf*. The English translations used for the Qurʾānic verses have been taken from Ṣaḥīḥ International, Muhsin Khan, and Abdel Haleem.
5) The *kasrah* is generally written beneath the letter in most Arabic fonts. However, when it appears on a letter that carries a *shaddah*, it is placed beneath the *shaddah* on top of the letter. This variation occurs due to the Calibri font used throughout this book.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

All praise is due to Allāh, by Whose grace this work has been completed.

The two primary references upon which this textbook is based are:

1. **Lisān al-Qurʾān** – a three-volume series authored by the teachers of *Madrasah ʿĀʾishah Ṣiddīqah*, Karachi, Pakistan.
2. **Qawāʿid al-Naḥw** – authored by *Maulānā Nadīm al-Wājidī*.

While the structure and foundational principles of these two works have served as the main framework for this book, the presentation here has been slightly re-organised to suit the needs of learners. The grammatical rules have been abridged and simplified, and new examples have been introduced to enhance understanding and application. Nevertheless, the overall structure, pedagogical approach, and conceptual progression closely follow the methodology laid out in the aforementioned references.

May Allāh ﷻ reward the authors of these invaluable works and accept their efforts as a service to the Arabic language and the Qurʾān.

TRANSLITERATION TABLE

This page presents a transliteration guide, mapping some difficult to pronounce Arabic letters to their English phonetic equivalents. It's designed to help learners accurately pronounce Arabic words using the English alphabet.

Arabic	English
ا	ā (Elongated sound)
ث	Tha
ح	Ḥa
خ	Kh
ذ	Dha
ش	Sh
ص	Ṣ
ض	Ḍ
ط	Ṭ
ظ	Ẓ
ع	‘
غ	Gha
ي	ī

Contents

The Arabic Word and Its Types - اَلْكَلِمَةُ وَ أَقْسَامُهَا 10

The Noun - اَلْاِسْمُ 11

The Definite & Indefinite Nouns - اَلْمَعْرِفَةُ وَ النَّكِرَةُ 12

The Definite Article الْ (*alif* & *lām*) 14

The Sun & Moon Letters - اَلْحُرُوْفُ الشَّمْسِيَّةُ وَ الْقَمَرِيَّةُ 16

The Connecting *Hamzah* - هَمْزَةُ الْوَصْلِ 18

The Independent *Hamzah* - هَمْزَةُ الْقَطْعِ 19

The Masculine & Feminine Genders - اَلْمُذَكَّرُ وَ الْمُؤَنَّثُ 20

The Three Arabic Cases - اَلْإِعْرَابُ 23

The Singular, Dual & Plural - اَلْمُفْرَدُ، اَلْمُثَنّٰى، اَلْجَمْعُ 25

The Plural - اَلْجَمْعُ 28

Broken Plural - اَلْجَمْعُ الْمُكَسَّرُ 32

The Arabic Sentence - اَلْجُمْلَةُ الْعَرَبِيَّةُ 34

The Subject and Predicate - اَلْمُبْتَدَأُ وَ الْخَبَرُ 35

Pronouns - ضَمَائِرُ 39

Compound Phrases - اَلْمُرَكَّبَاتُ 43

The Adjective Phrase - اَلْمُرَكَّبُ التَّوْصِيْفِيُّ 44

The Iḍāfah Phrase - اَلْمُرَكَّبُ الْإِضَافِيُّ 49

The Use of بَعْضُ and كُلُّ 56

Attached Pronouns - اَلضَّمَائِرُ الْمُتَّصِلَةُ 59

Prepositions - اَلْحُرُوْفُ الْجَارَّةُ 63

Demonstrative Pronouns - أَسْمَاءُ الْإِشَارَةِ 67

Relative Pronouns - اَلْأَسْمَاءُ الْمَوْصُوْلَةُ 73

Declinable And Non-Declinable - اَلْمُعْرَبُ وَ الْمَبْنِيُّ 77

Interrogative Particles - أَسْمَاءُ الْاِسْتِفْهَامِ 79

Diptotes - أَسْمَاءُ غَيْرِ مُنْصَرِفَةٍ 84

The Verbal Noun - اَلْمَصْدَرُ 88

The Verb – اَلْفِعْلُ 91

The Science of Morphology - عِلْمُ الصَّرْفِ 95

The Verbal Sentence - اَلْجُمْلَةُ الْفِعْلِيَّةُ 98

مَا of Negation - مَا النَّافِيَةُ 103

The Intransitive and Transitive Verb - اَلْفِعْلُ اللَّازِمُ وَ الْمُتَعَدِّيُ 105

The Imperfect Verb - اَلْفِعْلُ الْمُضَارِعُ 107

The Six Verb Patterns - اَلْأَبْوَابُ السِّتَّةُ 108

The Imperative Verb - اَلْفِعْلُ الْأَمْرُ 118

The Negative Imperative Verb - اَلْفِعْلُ النَّهْيُ 122

Adverb of Time and Place - ظَرْفُ الزَّمَانِ وَ الْمَكَانِ 126

Types of Objects – أَنْوَاعُ الْمَفَاعِيْلِ 132

Sound and Defective Verbs - اَلْأَفْعَالُ الصَّحِيْحَةُ وَ الْمُعْتَلَّةُ 135

إِنَّ and its Sisters - إِنَّ وَ أَخَوَاتُهَا 183

The مَنْقُوْصٌ, the مَقْصُوْرٌ, and the مَمْدُوْدٌ Nouns 189

Lesson 1

The Arabic Word and Its Types - اَلْكَلِمَةُ وَ أَقْسَامُهَا

A meaningful word in Arabic is called a كَلِمَةٌ. A كَلِمَةٌ is of three types in Arabic:

All Arabic words fall into one of the above three categories. Whether these words are in the Holy Qur'ān, Prophetic *Aḥādith*, poems or Arabic books, every word is either a noun, verb or particle.

A noun is a word that denotes a person, place or thing.

A verb is a word that describes an action or occurrence. It shows what someone or something did, is doing or will do.

A particle is a type of word in Arabic that does not carry meaning on its own when isolated. Instead, it functions by linking or helping other words, such as joining nouns, verbs, or both, to complete the meaning.

Lesson 2

The Noun - اَلْاِسْمُ

A Noun is a word that denotes a person, place, or thing. For example:

A person	A place	A thing
خَالِدٌ	أُسْتُرَالِيَا	كِتَابٌ
Khālid	Australia	A Book
عَلِيٌّ	سِدْنِيْ	قَلَمٌ
ʿAlī	Sydney	A pen
حَسَنٌ	تُرْكِيَا	كُرْسِيٌّ
Ḥasan	Turkey	A chair

A Noun in Arabic is further categorised into three categories:

1	Definite and Indefinite	اَلْمَعْرِفَةُ وَ النَّكِرَةُ
2	Masculine & Feminine	اَلْمُذَكَّرُ وَ الْمُؤَنَّثُ
3	Singular, Dual and Plural	اَلْمُفْرَدُ، اَلْمُثَنّٰى، اَلْجَمْعُ

We will explore each of these categories in detail in the upcoming lessons.

Lesson 3

The Definite & Indefinite Nouns - اَلْمَعْرِفَةُ وَ النَّكِرَةُ

An Indefinite Noun in Arabic is called: اِسْمٌ نَكِرَةٌ

An indefinite noun refers to the name of an unspecific person, place, or thing. For example:

رَجُلٌ	مَدِيْنَةٌ	طَالِبٌ	سَيَّارَةٌ
A man	A city	A student	A car

All the examples above refer to things that are not specific.

For instance, *"a man"* could be any man, not a particular one. The same applies to the words city, book, and car.

Each noun ends with *tanwīn* (تَنْوِين) – that is, two *ḍammahs* (ضَمَّتَان) – which is a sign of indefiniteness.

A Definite Noun in Arabic is called: اِسْمٌ مَعْرِفَةٌ

A definite noun refers to the name of a specific person, place, or thing. For example:

مُحَمَّدٌ	سِدْنِيْ	اَلطَّالِبُ	اَلسَّيَّارَةُ
Muḥammad	Sydney	The student	The car

All the examples above refer to things that are specific.

In the first example, 'Muḥammad' is the name of a specific person. Similarly, Sydney is the name of a specific city and not any city.

The last two examples do not end with a *tanwīn* (تَنْوِيْن), rather they end with a single *ḍammah*. This is because of the definite article اَلْ (*alif* and *lām*) that has been added at the beginning of the word.

We will explore this in detail in the next chapter. Below are a few more examples of definite and indefinite nouns.

اَلْمَعْرِفَةُ		اَلنَّكِرَةُ	
زَيْدٌ	Zayd	رَجُلٌ	A man
عَائِشَةُ	ʿĀʾishah	اِمْرَأَةٌ	A woman
خَالِدٌ	Khālid	وَلَدٌ	A Boy
فَاطِمَةُ	Fāṭimah	بِنْتٌ	A girl
اَلْمَسْجِدُ	The Mosque	مَسْجِدٌ	A Mosque
اَلْمَدْرَسَةُ	The school	مَدْرَسَةٌ	A school
اَلْبَيْتُ	The house	بَيْتٌ	A house
اَلْقَلَمُ	The pen	قَلَمٌ	A pen
اَلْبُسْتَانُ	The garden	بُسْتَانٌ	A garden

Lesson 4

The Definite Article الْ (*alif & lām*)

In Arabic, a word becomes definite by adding the definite article الْ to the beginning. Once الْ is added, two changes occur:

1) The word becomes a definite noun.

2) The *tanwīn* (تَنْوِيْن) at the end is removed and replaced with a single *fatḥah* (فَتْحَة), *kasrah* (كَسْرَة), or *ḍammah* (ضَمَّة).

The following examples illustrate these changes clearly.

اَلنَّكِرَةُ		اَلْمَعْرِفَةُ	
مِفْتَاحٌ	A key	اَلْمِفْتَاحُ	The key
تُفَّاحَةٌ	An apple	اَلتُّفَّاحَةُ	The apple
نَهْرٌ	A river	اَلنَّهْرُ	The river
جَبَلٌ	A mountain	اَلْجَبَلُ	The mountain
غُرْفَةٌ	A room	اَلْغُرْفَةُ	The room
بَقَرَةٌ	A cow	اَلْبَقَرَةُ	The cow

The word مِفْتَاحٌ becomes definite when the definite article الْ is added, changing it from *a key* to *the key* - اَلْمِفْتَاحُ.

Notice that the indefinite article *'a'* in *'a key'* and '*an'* in '*an apple'* has no direct equivalent in Arabic; it is implied through *tanwīn*. In contrast, the definite article الْ explicitly carries the meaning of *'the'*.

Pronouncing the Definite Article الْ

The ل of the definite article is not always pronounced. Read the following two examples of definite nouns and identify when the ل is pronounced and when it is silent:

اَلْبَيْتُ	اَلطَّبِيْبُ

Notice how the ل of the word اَلْبَيْتُ is pronounced whereas the ل of the word اَلطَّبِيْبُ is not pronounced.

This is due to a process called assimilation which makes the pronunciation of certain Arabic letters easier.

For this reason, the Arabic Alphabet is divided into Sun and Moon letters. We will cover these letters in the next lesson.

Lesson 5

The Sun & Moon Letters - اَلْحُرُوْفُ الشَّمْسِيَّةُ وَ الْقَمَرِيَّةُ

In Arabic, the Sun letters (اَلْحُرُوْفُ الشَّمْسِيَّةُ) are 14 in total. When the definite article الْ is added before them, the ل is not pronounced, and the following letter carries a *shaddah* (شَدَّة).

The Moon letters (اَلْحُرُوْفُ الْقَمَرِيَّةُ) are also 14. When ال is added before them, the ل is pronounced with a *sukūn* (سُكُوْن).

The table on the next page illustrates how the Sun and Moon letters behave when combined with ال.

Note: the ل is always written, but the difference lies in pronunciation.

The Sun Letters

The 14 sun letters are:

ن	ل	ظ	ط	ض	ص	ش	س	ز	ر	ذ	د	ث	ت

The Moon Letters

The 14 moon letters are:

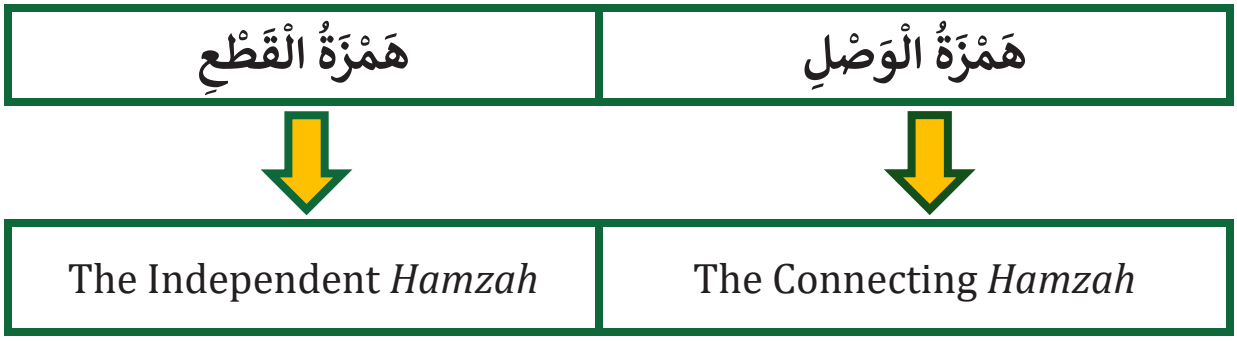
ي	و	ه	م	ك	ق	ف	غ	ع	خ	ح	ج	ب	ا

Sun letters		Moon letters	
اَلْحُرُوْفُ الشَّمْسِيَّةُ		اَلْحُرُوْفُ الْقَمَرِيَّةُ	
Example	Letter	Example	Letter
اَلتَّوَّابُ	ت	اَلْإِكْرَامُ	ا
اَلثَّوَابُ	ث	اَلْبَارِئُ	ب
اَلدَّاعِيْ	د	اَلْجَبَّارُ	ج
اَلذَّكَاءُ	ذ	اَلْحَكَمُ	ح
اَلرَّحْمٰنُ	ر	اَلْخَالِقُ	خ
اَلزَّاهِدُ	ز	اَلْعَزِيْزُ	ع
اَلسَّلَامُ	س	اَلْغَفَّارُ	غ
اَلشَّكُوْرُ	ش	اَلْفَتَّاحُ	ف
اَلصَّمَدُ	ص	اَلْقُدُّوْسُ	ق
اَلضَّآرُّ	ض	اَلْكَبِيْرُ	ك
اَلطَّاهِرُ	ط	اَلْمَلِكُ	م
اَلظَّاهِرُ	ظ	اَلْهَادِيْ	ه
اَللَّطِيْفُ	ل	اَلْوَهَّابُ	و
اَلنُّوْرُ	ن	اَلْيَقِيْنُ	ي

Lesson 6

The Connecting *Hamzah* - هَمْزَةُ الْوَصْلِ

There are two types of *hamzahs* in the Arabic language:



هَمْزَةُ الْوَصْلِ refers to 'the connecting *hamzah*'. It appears mostly at the beginning of a word and is only recited if it appears at the beginning of a sentence and is silent (not pronounced) when it appears in the middle of a sentence or when there is a word proceeding it. For example:

The word اَلْكِتَابُ begins with a هَمْزَةُ الْوَصْلِ. The *hamzah* is pronounced as there is nothing preceding it. However, if there were to be a word before it, it would not be pronounced. For example:

Translation	Not Pronounced	Pronounced
I read the book	قَرَأْتُ الْكِتَابَ	اَلْكِتَابُ
I entered the Mosque	دَخَلْتُ الْمَسْجِدَ	اَلْمَسْجِدُ
I ate the apple	أَكَلْتُ التُّفَّاحَةَ	اَلتُّفَّاحَةُ
I opened the door	فَتَحْتُ الْبَابَ	اَلْبَابُ

Lesson 7

The Independent *Hamzah* - هَمْزَةُ الْقَطْعِ

هَمْزَةُ الْقَطْعِ refers to 'the independent *hamzah*'. This type of *hamzah* is always pronounced, regardless of its position within a word or sentence. It can appear at the beginning, middle, or end of a word. For example:

أَحَدٌ	إِلٰهَ	إِذَا
⬇	⬇	⬇
قُلْ هُوَ اللهُ أَحَدٌ	لَآ إِلٰهَ إِلَّا اللهُ	إِذَا جَآءَ نَصْرُ اللهِ

1) In the first example, the word أَحَدٌ is preceded by اللهُ but the *hamzah* is still recited as it is a هَمْزَةُ الْقَطْعِ.
2) In the second example, the words إِلٰهَ and إِلَّا are preceded by other words but the *hamzah* is still recited in both words.
3) In the third example, the word إِذَا appears at the beginning of the sentence and is recited.

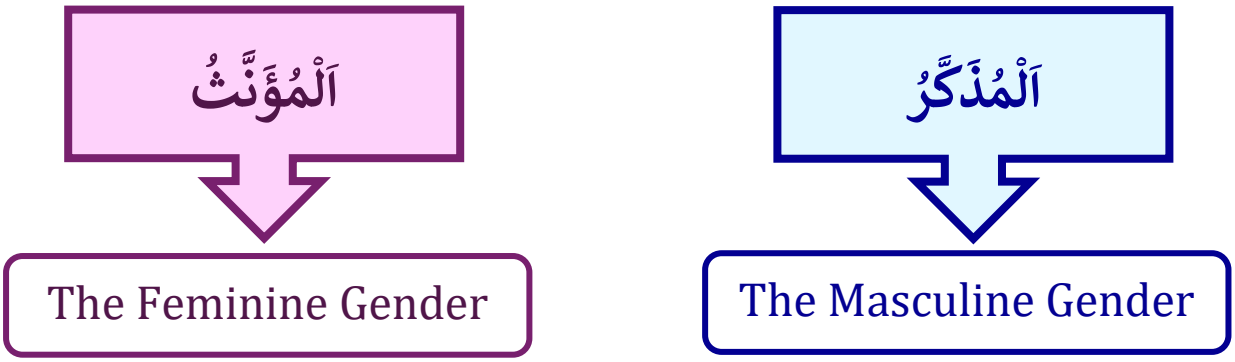
The three examples illustrate how the *hamzah* is recited irrespective of where it appears within the sentence. Practice reading the verses below, which demonstrate the different types of *hamzah*.

اِقْرَأْ بِاسْمِ رَبِّكَ الَّذِيْ خَلَقَ
إِنَّآ أَنْزَلْنَاهُ فِيْ لَيْلَةِ الْقَدْرِ
فَاعْلَمْ أَنَّهُ لَآ إِلٰهَ إِلَّا اللهُ
وَإِذْ قَالَ رَبُّكَ لِلْمَلَآئِكَةِ إِنِّيْ جَاعِلٌ فِي الْأَرْضِ خَلِيْفَةً
أَلَمْ نَشْرَحْ لَكَ صَدْرَكَ

Lesson 8

The Masculine & Feminine Genders - اَلْمُذَكَّرُ وَ الْمُؤَنَّثُ

In Arabic, there are only two grammatical genders: masculine and feminine. There is no neutral gender. Every noun and adjective must be either masculine or feminine.



By default, all nouns are considered masculine unless one of the following eight signs or characteristics indicates that the noun is feminine:

1. Ends with *tā' marbūṭah* (ة / ـة)

This is the most common sign of femininity. For example:

مُعَلِّمَةٌ	غُرْفَةٌ	سَيَّارَةٌ
Female Teacher	Room	Car

2. Ends with *alif maqṣūrah* (ى)

This is an *alif* written in the shape of ى (without dots). It appears only in nouns and is always preceded by a *fatḥah*. For example:

كُبْرٰى	لَيْلٰى	سَلْمٰى
Greater (feminine)	Female Name	Female Name

3. Ends with *alif mamdūdah* (اء)

This refers to an *alif* followed by a *hamzah* (ء). In the Qurʾān, this type of *alif* is typically written with a *madd* to indicate the elongated sound. For example:

زَرْقَآءُ	صَحْرَآءُ	أَسْمَآءُ
Blue (feminine)	Desert	Female Name

The first three signs - *tāʾ marbūṭah*, *alif maqṣūrah*, and *alif mamdūdah* - are evident within the structure of the noun itself. You can visually identify these signs in the way the word is written. The remaining five signs, however, relate to the meaning of the noun, which indicates its feminine gender.

4. Female Names

Proper names of females are always feminine. For example:

زَيْنَبُ	عَائِشَةُ	مَرْيَمُ
Zainab	ʿĀʾishah	Maryam

5. Female Titles

Words denoting female roles or titles. For example:

بِنْتٌ	عَرُوْسَةٌ	أُمٌّ
Daughter	Bride	Mother

6. Paired Body Parts

Body parts that are typically in pairs are feminine. For example:

يَدٌ	أُذُنٌ	عَيْنٌ
Hand	Ear	Eye

7. Names of Cities and Countries

Most geographical place names are feminine. For example:

بَاكِسْتَانٌ	سِدْنِيْ	مِصْرُ
Pakistan	Sydney	Egypt

8. *Samāʿī* Feminine Words (مُؤَنَّثٌ سَمَاعِيٌّ)

These words are feminine by tradition, not by any rule. For example:

رِيْحٌ	نَارٌ	نَفْسٌ	أَرْضٌ	شَمْسٌ
Wind	Fire	Soul	Earth	Sun

Although the examples above do not carry any visible signs of being feminine, they are still classified as feminine. This is because these words have been traditionally used as feminine in classical Arabic and are also found as feminine in the Qurʾān.

Note: Some words, such as طَلْحَةٌ، حُذَيْفَةٌ, and مُعَاوِيَةٌ, may appear to have a *tāʾ marbūṭah* at the end, which is usually a sign of femininity. However, since these are male names, they are considered masculine.

Lesson 9

The Three Arabic Cases - اَلْإِعْرَابُ

A noun in Arabic can appear with one of three case endings. These endings indicate the grammatical role of the word in the sentence. The system of these changes in the endings of words is called إِعْرَاب in Arabic, and in English, it is referred to as declension. There are many factors that determine which case a noun takes, and these will be explored in the upcoming lessons. The three cases are:

1. Nominative Case (مَرْفُوْع)

When the last letter of a singular noun carries a *ḍammah* (ـُ) or *ḍammatān* (ـٌ), the noun is in the مَرْفُوْع case. For example:

اَلْمَسْجِدُ	كِتَابٌ
The mosque	A book

2. Accusative Case (مَنْصُوْب)

When the last letter of a singular noun carries a *fatḥah* (ـَ) or *fatḥatān* (ـً), the noun is in the مَنْصُوْب case. For example:

اَلْمَسْجِدَ	كِتَابًا
The mosque	A book

3. Genitive Case (مَجْرُوْر)

When the last letter of a singular noun carries a *kasrah* (ـِ) or *kasratān* (ـٍ), the noun is in the مَجْرُوْر case. For example:

اَلْمَسْجِدِ	كِتَابٍ
The mosque	A book

Below are a few more examples of how singular nouns appear in all three cases:

مَجْرُوْر	مَنْصُوْب	مَرْفُوْع
وَلَدٍ	وَلَدًا	وَلَدٌ
اَلْبِنْتِ	اَلْبِنْتَ	اَلْبِنْتُ
تُفَّاحَةٍ	تُفَّاحَةً	تُفَّاحَةٌ
اَلْكُرْسِيِّ	اَلْكُرْسِيَّ	اَلْكُرْسِيُّ
قَلَمٍ	قَلَمًا	قَلَمٌ
اَلْبَيْتِ	اَلْبَيْتَ	اَلْبَيْتُ
مَدْرَسَةٍ	مَدْرَسَةً	مَدْرَسَةٌ
اَلطَّعَامِ	اَلطَّعَامَ	اَلطَّعَامُ
بَحْرٍ	بَحْرًا	بَحْرٌ
اَلزَّهْرَةِ	اَلزَّهْرَةَ	اَلزَّهْرَةُ

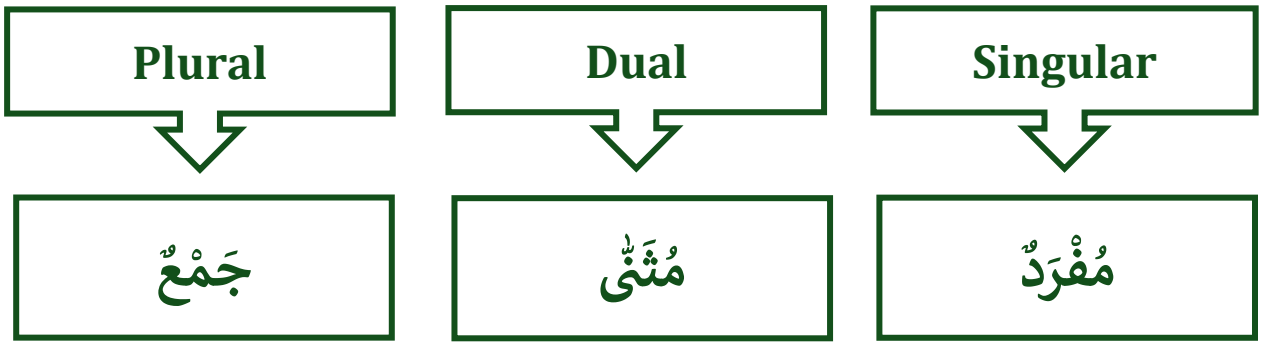
Note: An *alif* is placed after certain letters ending with two *fatḥas*. This ensures that when pausing at the last letter, its sound is elongated, similar to that of an *alif*.

Lesson 10

The Singular, Dual & Plural - اَلْمُفْرَدُ، اَلْمُثَنّٰى، اَلْجَمْعُ

In English, a noun can be either singular or plural. Plural refers to more than one.

In Arabic, a noun can be singular, dual, or plural. The singular form is used for one person or thing. The dual form is used specifically for two people or things. The plural form is used for three or more.



The singular noun and its إِعْرَاب:

The case forms of the singular noun were discussed in the previous lesson. If the last letter of a singular noun has a *ḍammah* (ـُ) or *ḍammatān* (ـٌ), it is in the مَرْفُوْع case, and we refer to it as مَرْفُوْع بِالضَّمَّةِ.

If it carries a *fatḥah* (ـَ) or *fatḥatān* (ـً), it is in the مَنْصُوْب case which we describe as مَنْصُوْب بِالْفَتْحَةِ.

And if it ends with a *kasrah* (ـِ) or *kasratān* (ـٍ), it is in the مَجْرُوْر case, and we call it مَجْرُوْر بِالْكَسْرَةِ.

The dual noun and its إِعْرَاب:

A dual noun refers to two referents. Unlike singular nouns, dual nouns are formed by modifying the singular form with specific endings. To form the dual from a singular masculine noun, certain letters are added to the end.

When the noun is in the مَرْفُوْع case, it is made dual by:

1) Removing the *tanwīn* from the singular noun and replacing it with a *fatḥah*.
2) Adding the letters *alif* and ن with a *kasrah* (انِ).

When the noun is in the مَنْصُوْب or مَجْرُوْر cases, we:

1) Remove the *tanwīn* and replace it with a *fatḥah*.
2) Add the letters ي and a ن with a *kasrah* (يْنِ).

The sign of the مَرْفُوْع case in a singular noun is the *ḍammah* (ـُ), while in a dual noun, it is the *alif* (ا).

In the مَنْصُوْب case, a singular noun is marked by a *fatḥah* (ـَ), whereas a dual noun takes a ي followed by ن.

Similarly, in the مَجْرُوْر case, a singular noun ends with a *kasrah* (ـِ), while a dual noun again ends with ي and ن (يْنِ), just like in the مَنْصُوْب case.

Thus, the dual has two visible case endings: *alif* for the مَرْفُوْع case, and ي for both the مَنْصُوْب and مَجْرُوْر cases.

As for singular feminine nouns that end with a *tāʾ marbūṭah* (ة), the dual is formed by adding the same two letters - *alif* and ن - at the end. However, the *tāʾ marbūṭah* changes into a *tāʾ maftūḥah* (ت), which is the original open form of the letter ت.

Below are some examples showing how singular nouns are converted into their dual forms in different cases and genders.

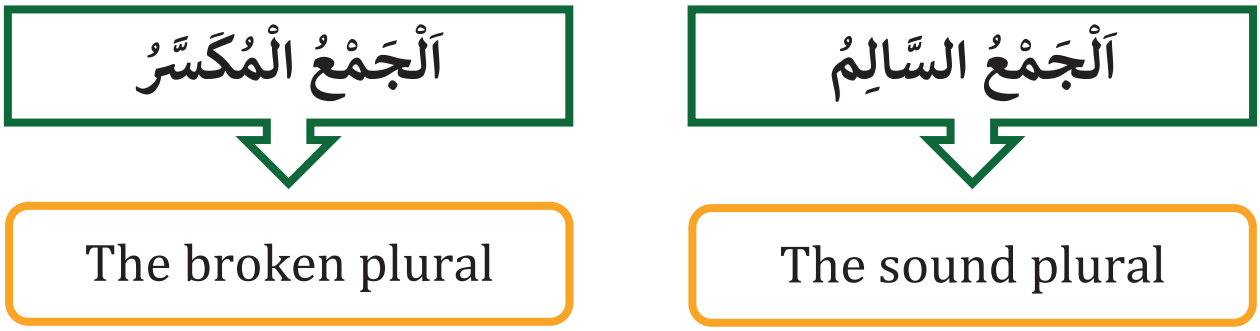
Singular	Dual	Gender	Case
طَالِبٌ	طَالِبَانِ	Masculine	مَرْفُوْع
طَالِبَةٌ	طَالِبَتَانِ	Feminine	
طَالِبًا	طَالِبَيْنِ	Masculine	مَنْصُوْب
طَالِبَةً	طَالِبَتَيْنِ	Feminine	
طَالِبٍ	طَالِبَيْنِ	Masculine	مَجْرُوْر
طَالِبَةٍ	طَالِبَتَيْنِ	Feminine	

Lesson 11

The Plural - اَلْجَمْعُ

The singular noun refers to one person or thing, the dual refers to two and the plural refers to three or more. In this lesson, you will learn how to form plural nouns for both masculine and feminine in their various cases.

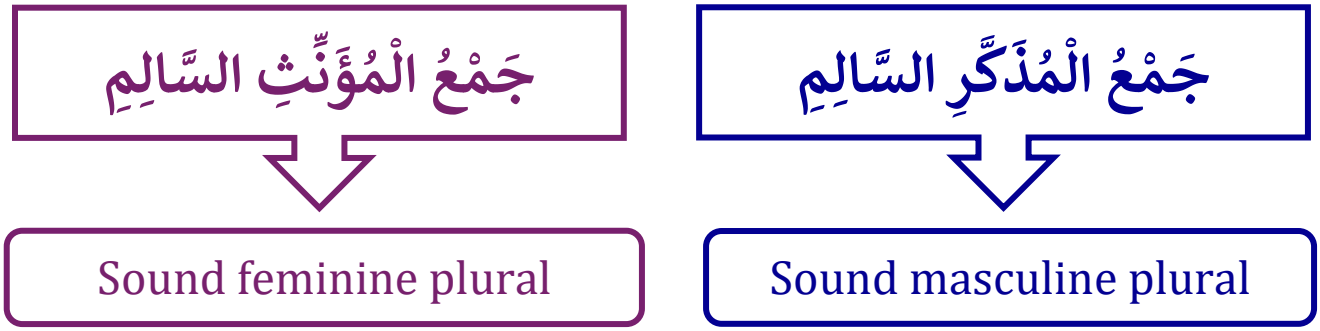
There are two types of plurals in Arabic:



The sound plural is also known as the regular plural and the broken plural is sometimes referred to as the irregular plural.

The sound plural اَلْجَمْعُ السَّالِمُ:

The sound/regular plural is a type of plural which is formed by adding certain letters at the end of the singular word to make it plural and is divided into two categories:

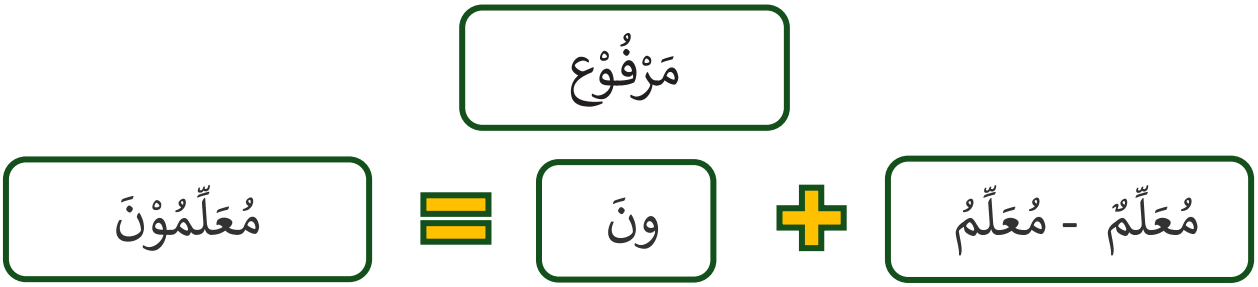


1. The sound masculine plural جَمْعُ الْمُذَكَّرِ السَّالِمِ

To form a جَمْعُ الْمُذَكَّرِ السَّالِمِ in the مَرْفُوْع case from a singular noun, you:

1) Remove the *tanwīn* and replace it with a *ḍammah*.
2) Add the letters و and a ن with a *fatḥah* (ونَ).

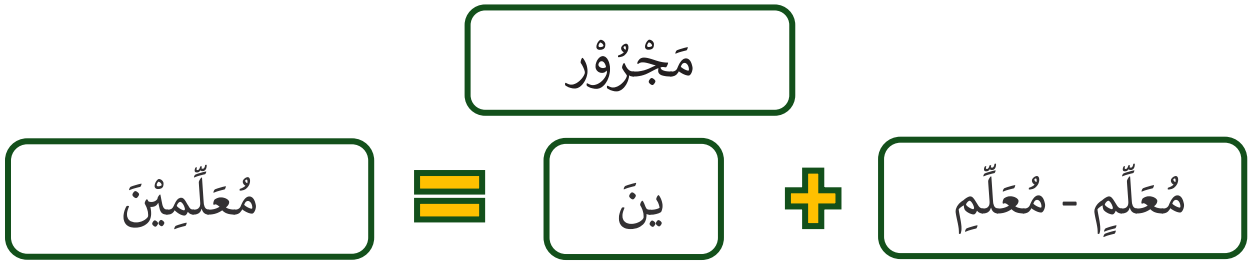
For example:



To form a جَمْعُ الْمُذَكَّرِ السَّالِمِ in the مَنْصُوْب and مَجْرُوْر cases from a singular noun, you:

1) Remove the *tanwīn* and replace it with a *kasrah*.
2) Add the letters ي and a ن with a *fatḥah* (ينَ).

For example:



2. The sound feminine plural جَمْعُ الْمُؤَنَّثِ السَّالِمِ

To form a جَمْعُ الْمُؤَنَّثِ السَّالِمِ in the مَرْفُوْع case from a singular noun, you:

1) Drop the *tāʾ marbūṭah*.

2) Add the letters *alif* and a ت with two *ḍammahs* (اتٌ).

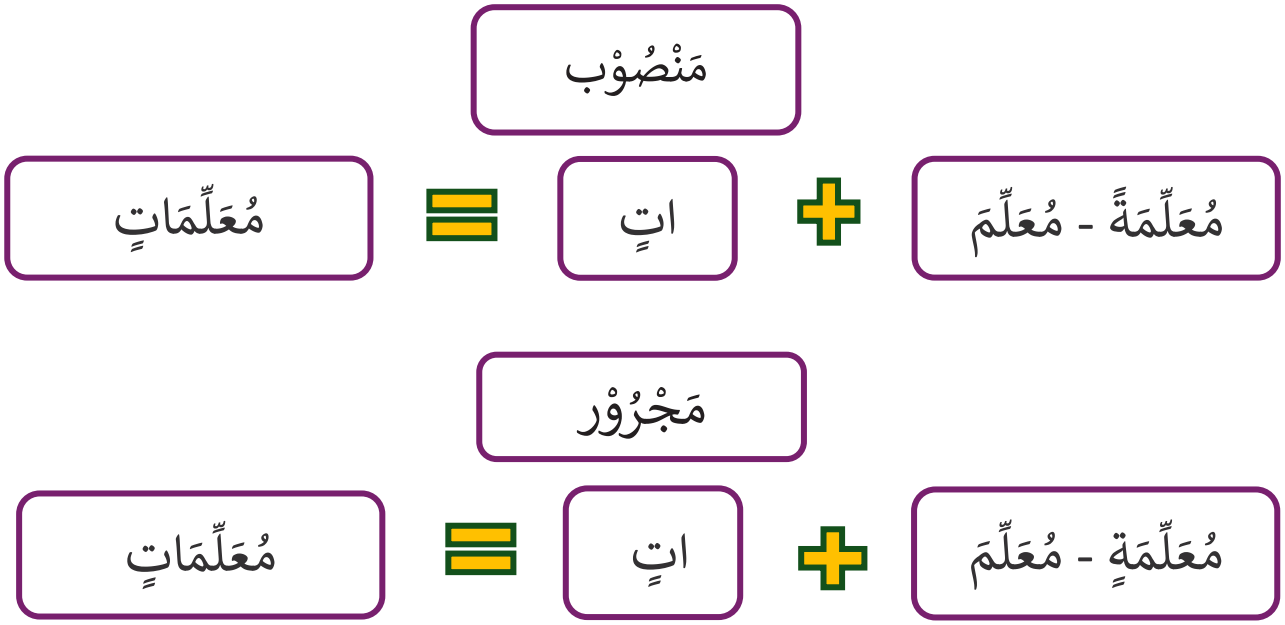
For example:

To form a جَمْعُ الْمُؤَنَّثِ السَّالِمُ in the مَنْصُوْب and مَجْرُوْر cases from a singular noun, you:

1) Drop the *tāʾ marbūṭah*.

2) Add the letters *alif* and a ت with two *kasrahs* (اتٍ).

For example:



Not all singular nouns can be transformed to plural by adding the above letters to them. The only nouns that can be changed to plural are mostly adjectives and nouns that denote professions or characteristics of a person.

Below are a few examples of singular nouns transformed into their dual and plural forms across various grammatical cases.

Plural		Dual	Singular	Case
Feminine	Masculine			
مُسْلِمَاتٌ	مُسْلِمُوْنَ	مُسْلِمَانِ/ مُسْلِمَتَانِ	مُسْلِمٌ/ مُسْلِمَةٌ	مَرْفُوْع
مُؤْمِنَاتٍ	مُؤْمِنِيْنَ	مُؤْمِنَيْنَ/ مُؤْمِنَتَيْنَ	مُؤْمِنًا / مُؤْمِنَةً	مَنْصُوْب
مُهَنْدِسَاتٍ	مُهَنْدِسِيْنَ	مُهَنْدِسَيْنِ/ مُهَنْدِسَتَيْنِ	مُهَنْدِسٍ/ مُهَنْدِسَةٍ	مَجْرُوْر
طَالِبَاتٌ	طَالِبُوْنَ	طَالِبَانِ/ طَالِبَتَانِ	طَالِبٌ/ طَالِبَةٌ	مَرْفُوْع
عَالِمَاتٍ	عَالِمِيْنَ	عَالِمَيْنِ / عَالِمَتَيْنِ	عَالِمًا / عَالِمَةً	مَنْصُوْب
مُدِيْرَاتٍ	مُدِيْرِيْنَ	مُدِيْرَيْنِ / مُدِيْرَتَيْنِ	مُدِيْرٍ/ مُدِيْرَةٍ	مَجْرُوْر
مُسَافِرَاتٌ	مُسَافِرُوْنَ	مُسَافِرَانِ / مُسَافِرَتَانِ	مُسَافِرٌ/ مُسَافِرَةٌ	مَرْفُوْع
مُجْتَهِدَاتٍ	مُجْتَهِدِيْنَ	مُجْتَهِدَيْنِ / مُجْتَهِدَتَيْنِ	مُجْتَهِدًا / مُجْتَهِدَةً	مَنْصُوْب
مُخْلِصَاتٍ	مُخْلِصِيْنَ	مُخْلِصَيْنِ / مُخْلِصَتَيْنِ	مُخْلِصٍ/ مُخْلِصَةٍ	مَجْرُوْر
مُمَرِّضَاتٌ	مُمَرِّضُوْنَ	مُمَرِّضَانِ / مُمَرِّضَتَانِ	مُمَرِّضٌ/ مُمَرِّضَةٌ	مَرْفُوْع
فَلَّاحَاتٍ	فَلَّاحِيْنَ	فَلَّاحَيْنِ / فَلَّاحَتَيْنِ	فَلَّاحًا/ فَلَّاحَةً	مَنْصُوْب
زَائِرَاتٍ	زَائِرِيْنَ	زَائِرَيْنِ/ زَائِرَتَيْنِ	زَائِرٍ/ زَائِرَةٍ	مَجْرُوْر

Lesson 12

Broken Plural - اَلْجَمْعُ الْمُكَسَّرُ

Unlike the regular plural, the irregular/broken plural is a type of plural which already has a conventional form. There is no need to add any letters to it as the word itself represents a plural form. For example:

Plural		Singular	
Houses	بُيُوْتٌ	House	بَيْتٌ
Eyes/Springs	عُيُوْنٌ	Eye/Spring	عَيْنٌ
Mosques	مَسَاجِدُ	Mosque	مَسْجِدٌ
Libraries	مَكَاتِبُ	Library	مَكْتَبٌ
Men	رِجَالٌ	Man	رَجُلٌ
Books	كُتُبٌ	Book	كِتَابٌ
Paths	طُرُقٌ	Path	طَرِيْقٌ
Pens	أَقْلَامٌ	Pen	قَلَمٌ
Rivers	أَنْهَارٌ	River	نَهْرٌ
Boys	أَوْلَادٌ	Boy	وَلَدٌ
Names	أَسْمَاءٌ	Name	اِسْمٌ

As you can see from the examples above, there is no clear indication on how the singular nouns have transformed to plural. However, there are certain patterns you can see. You will have a better understanding of the irregular plurals as you build on your Arabic vocabulary.

Some nouns in Arabic can appear as both irregular and regular forms of the plural. For example:

Irregular plural	Regular plural	Singular
أَنْبِيَاءُ	نَبِيُّوْنَ	نَبِيٌّ
Prophets	Prophets	Prophet
عُلَمَاءُ	عَالِمُوْنَ	عَالِمٌ
Scholars	Scholars	Scholar
أَطِبَّاءُ	طَبِيْبُوْنَ	طَبِيْبٌ
Doctors	Doctors	Doctor
تُجَّارٌ	تَاجِرُوْنَ	تَاجِرٌ
Merchants	Merchants	Merchant
خُدَّامٌ	خَادِمُوْنَ	خَادِمٌ
Servants	Servants	Servant
كُتَّابٌ	كَاتِبُوْنَ	كَاتِبٌ
Writers	Writers	Writer

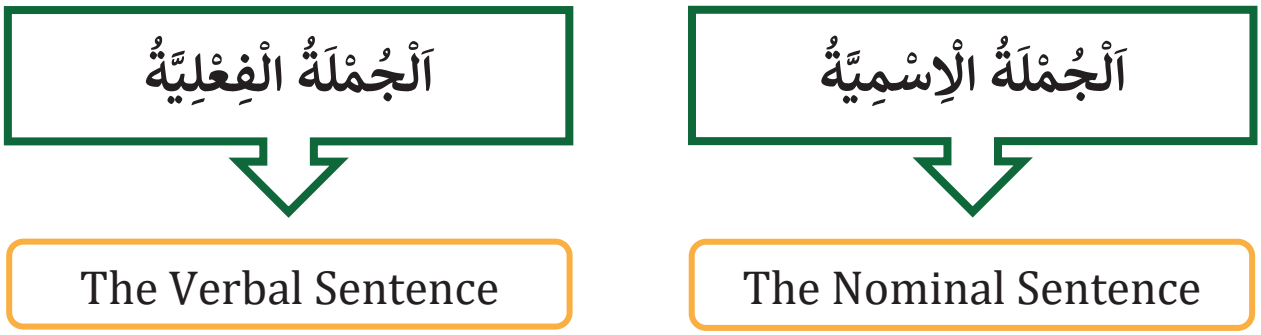
The best way to understand how the plurals in Arabic work, is to familiarise yourself with as many Arabic words alongside their plurals.

Lesson 13

The Arabic Sentence - اَلْجُمْلَةُ الْعَرَبِيَّةُ

There are two types of sentences in Arabic:

1) The Nominal Sentence
2) The Verbal Sentence



A nominal sentence begins with a noun and a verbal sentence begins with a verb. For example:

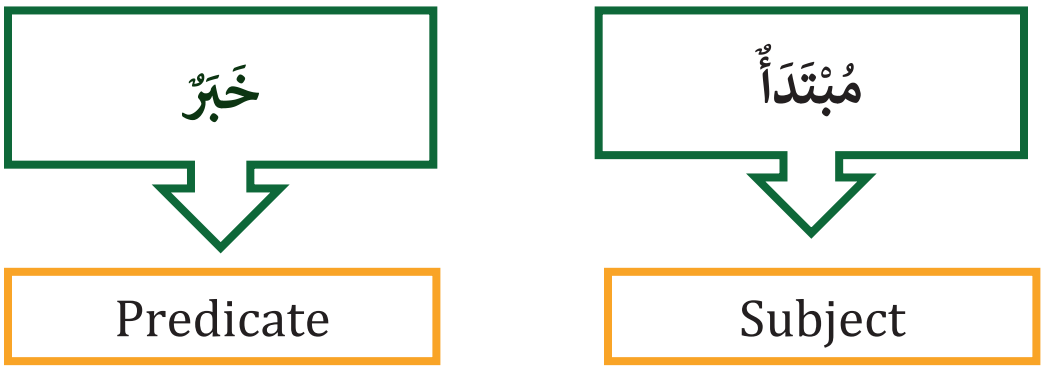
اَلْجُمْلَةُ الْفِعْلِيَّةُ	اَلْجُمْلَةُ الْاِسْمِيَّة
جَلَسَ الْوَلَدُ	اَلْمَسْجِدُ كَبِيْرٌ
The boy sat	The mosque is big
دَخَلَ الْمُعَلِّمُ	زَيْدٌ عَالِمٌ
The teacher entered	Zayd is a scholar

For now, we will focus on the nominal sentence.

A nominal sentence begins with a noun and comprises of a subject and predicate. The next lesson will address the principles and rules pertaining to the subject and predicate.

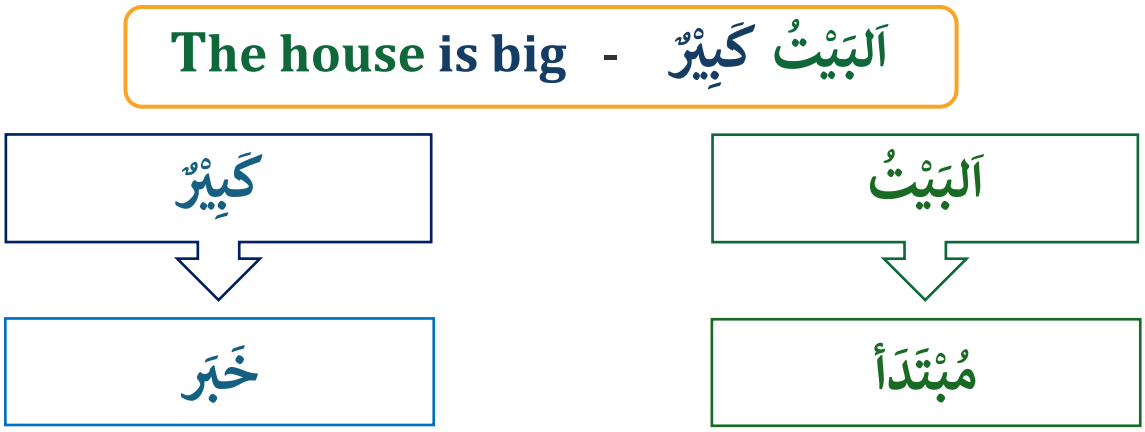
Lesson 14

The Subject and Predicate - اَلْمُبْتَدَأُ وَ الْخَبَرُ



The noun with which the nominal sentence begins with is called مُبْتَدَأ (subject) whilst the second part of the sentence which gives information about the مُبْتَدَأ (subject) is called خَبَر (predicate).

For example:



In the example above, 'The house' is the subject and 'is big' is the predicate.

In a جُمْلَة اِسْمِيَّة, the مُبْتَدَأ is usually definite, while the خَبَر is indefinite. The subject can be definite with the article ال (*alif* and *lām*) or definite by being a proper noun. For example:

Zayd is a student - زَيْدٌ طَالِبٌ

زَيْدٌ	طَالِبٌ
مُبْتَدَأ	خَبَر

The teacher is present - اَلْمُعَلِّمُ حَاضِرٌ

اَلْمُعَلِّمُ	حَاضِرٌ
مُبْتَدَأ	خَبَر

The boy is active - اَلْوَلَدُ نَشِيْطٌ

اَلْوَلَدُ	نَشِيْطٌ
مُبْتَدَأ	خَبَر

Rules of مُبْتَدَأ and خَبَر

There are a few rules pertaining to the مُبْتَدَأ and خَبَر in a جُمْلَة اِسْمِيَّة:

1) The مُبْتَدَأ (subject) in a جُمْلَة اِسْمِيَّة is generally definite while the خَبَر (predicate) is indefinite.
2) Both the مُبْتَدَأ (subject) and خَبَر (predicate) are مَرْفُوْع.
3) The خَبَر (predicate) must agree with the مُبْتَدَأ (subject) in number and gender.

When the مُبْتَدَأ is singular, the خَبَر should also be singular. If the مُبْتَدَأ is dual, the خَبَر should be dual, and if the مُبْتَدَأ is plural, the خَبَر should likewise be plural. For example:

Singular	
The Muslim is truthful	اَلْمُسْلِمُ صَادِقٌ
Dual	
The two Muslims are truthful	اَلْمُسْلِمَانِ صَادِقَانِ
Plural	
The Muslims are truthful	اَلْمُسْلِمُوْنَ صَادِقُوْنَ

However, there is an exception: when the مُبْتَدَأ is a non-living plural noun, the خَبَر will appear in the singular feminine form. For example:

The books are beneficial	اَلْكُتُبُ مُفِيْدَةٌ
The vegetables are fresh	اَلْخَضْرَاوَاتُ طَازَجَةٌ
The windows are broken	اَلنَّوَافِذُ مَكْسُوْرَةٌ

The word اَلْكُتُبُ is the plural of اَلْكِتَابُ which means books. Since books are the plural of an inanimate object, the خَبَر appears in the singular feminine form. This rule applies regardless of the gender of the singular noun.

Lastly, if the مُبْتَدَأ is masculine, the خَبَر should also be masculine and if the مُبْتَدَأ is feminine, the خَبَر should also be feminine. For example:

Masculine	
The boy is small	اَلْوَلَدُ صَغِيْرٌ
Feminine	
The girl is small	اَلْبِنْتُ صَغِيْرَةٌ
Masculine	
The two students (m) are smart	اَلطَّالِبَانِ ذَكِيَّانِ
Feminine	
The two students (f) are smart	اَلطَّالِبَتَانِ ذَكِيَّتَانِ
Masculine	
The students (m) are hardworking	اَلطُّلَّابُ مُجْتَهِدُوْنَ
Feminine	
The students (f) are hardworking	اَلطَّالِبَاتُ مُجْتَهِدَاتٌ

Lesson 15

Pronouns - ضَمَائِرُ

Pronouns are words used in place of nouns, such as: he, she, I, and we. In Arabic, there are 14 pronouns, and they differ based on gender (masculine and feminine) and number (singular, dual, and plural). They are also classified according to person:

Third Person	Second person	First Person
غَائِبٌ	مُخَاطَبٌ	مُتَكَلِّمٌ

Pronouns are further divided into two main categories:

1. Detached Pronouns (اَلضَّمَائِرُ الْمُنْفَصِلَةُ) – stand alone in a sentence.
2. Attached Pronouns (اَلضَّمَائِرُ الْمُتَّصِلَةُ) – attach to verbs, nouns, or prepositions.

➢ The detached pronouns are divided into a further two categories:

a) ضَمِيْر مَرْفُوْع مُنْفَصِل: This is a detached pronoun that is always in the مَرْفُوْع case. It is used as a subject. For example: هُوَ – he, هِيَ – she, أَنَا – I.

b) ضَمِيْر مَنْصُوْب مُنْفَصِل: This is a detached pronoun that is always in the مَنْصُوْب case. It is used as the object for emphasis or exclusivity. It is exclusively used with the word إِيَّا.

➢ The attached pronouns are divided into a further three categories:

a) ضَمِيْر مَرْفُوْع مُتَّصِل: This is an attached pronoun that comes with a verb and is always in the مَرْفُوْع case.

b) ضَمِيْر مَنْصُوْب مُتَّصِل: This is an attached pronoun that is always in the مَنْصُوْب case. It is used as the object of a verb (مَفْعُوْلٌ بِهِ) or after particles that act like verbs (اَلْحُرُوْفُ الْمُشَبَّهَةُ بِالْفِعْلِ).

c) ضَمِيْر مَجْرُوْر مُتَّصِل: This is an attached pronoun that is always in the مَجْرُوْر case. It is used after a preposition or in an *iḍāfah* construction.

In this lesson you will learn about the ضَمِيْر مَرْفُوْع مُنْفَصِل. You will learn about the other types later.

The ضَمِيْر مَرْفُوْع مُنْفَصِل is called مُنْفَصِل (detached) because it does not attach to any noun, verb, or preposition. Instead, it appears independently in both writing and pronunciation. This independence is why it is called مُنْفَصِل (detached). It can stand alone at the beginning of a sentence or after a verb without needing to be joined to another word. This feature makes it easy to recognise in any sentence.

Unlike nouns, which change their endings depending on case, detached pronouns remain fixed in form. This makes them among the easiest parts of Arabic grammar to memorise, since their shape never changes whether they appear as a مُبْتَدَأ in a nominal sentence or as a subject in a verbal sentence.

Although these pronouns do not end with a *ḍammah* to show that they are in the مَرْفُوْع case, they are still considered مَرْفُوْع because detached pronouns do not change their endings.

Their grammatical role is understood from their position in the sentence, not from any change in their form. These pronouns are fixed in form and always stay the same, regardless of how they are used.

On the next page, all 14 detached pronouns have been listed.

Third Person	Masculine	Singular	هُوَ
		Dual	هُمَا
		Plural	هُمْ
	Feminine	Singular	هِيَ
		Dual	هُمَا
		Plural	هُنَّ
Second Person	Masculine	Singular	أَنْتَ
		Dual	أَنْتُمَا
		Plural	أَنْتُمْ
	Feminine	Singular	أَنْتِ
		Dual	أَنْتُمَا
		Plural	أَنْتُنَّ
First Person	Masculine and Feminine	Singular	أَنَا
		Plural	نَحْنُ

The table below shows all 14 detached pronouns used in nominal sentences. Notice how the خَبَر changes each time the pronoun (مُبْتَدَأ) changes. This is because, as you learned earlier, the خَبَر must match the مُبْتَدَأ in both number and gender.

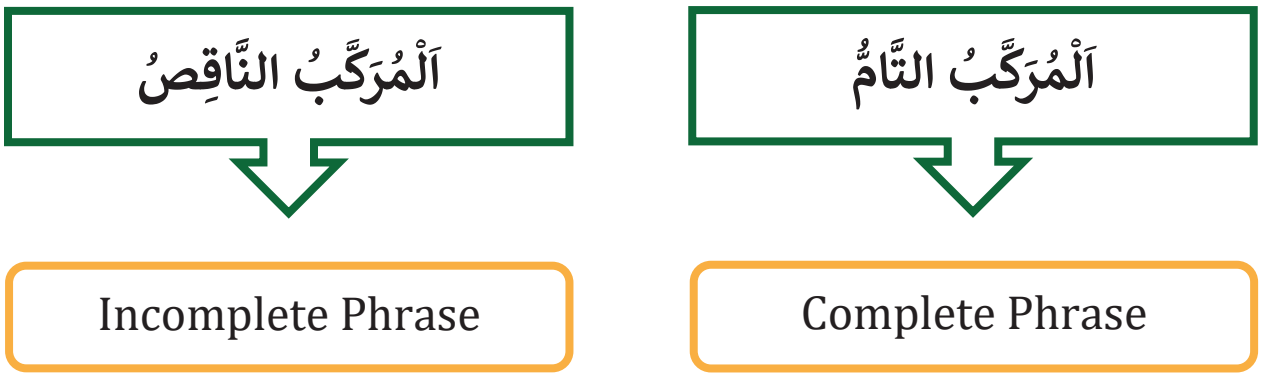
He is a Muslim	هُوَ مُسْلِمٌ
Both of them (m) are Muslims	هُمَا مُسْلِمَانِ
All of them (m) are Muslims	هُمْ مُسْلِمُوْنَ
She is a Muslim	هِيَ مُسْلِمَةٌ
Both of them (f) are Muslims	هُمَا مُسْلِمَتَانِ
All of them (f) are Muslims	هُنَّ مُسْلِمَاتٌ
You (m) are a Muslim	أَنْتَ مُسْلِمٌ
Both of you (m) are Muslims	أَنْتُمَا مُسْلِمَانِ
All of you (m) are Muslims	أَنْتُمْ مُسْلِمُوْنَ
You (f) are a Muslim	أَنْتِ مُسْلِمَةٌ
Both of you (f) are Muslims	أَنْتُمَا مُسْلِمَتَانِ
All of you (f) are Muslims	أَنْتُنَّ مُسْلِمَاتٌ
I am a Muslim	أَنَا مُسْلِمٌ
We are Muslims	نَحْنُ مُسْلِمُوْنَ

Lesson 16

Compound Phrases - اَلْمُرَكَّبَاتُ

Any group of two or more words that are connected to give meaning is called a 'Compound Phrase' (مُرَكَّب). Compound phrases are different from full sentences like the جُمْلَة اِسْمِيَّة and جُمْلَة فِعْلِيَّة. While جُمْلَة اِسْمِيَّة is a complete sentence with a clear مُبْتَدَأ and خَبَر, a مُرَكَّب may not always form a complete sentence. It can be just a group of words that are meaningfully joined together.

There are two types of مُرَكَّب:



A complete phrase gives full meaning by itself. It does not require any extra words to make sense. For example, a جُمْلَة اِسْمِيَّة is a complete phrase because it joins words together and gives full meaning without requiring further information.

An incomplete phrase does not give full meaning on its own. It still needs additional words to form a complete idea. The اَلْمُرَكَّبُ النَّاقِصُ is divided into two categories:

1. Adjective Phrase (اَلمُرَكَّبُ التَّوصِيْفِيُّ)
2. Possessive Phrase (اَلمُرَكَّبُ الْإِضَافِيُّ)

Lesson 17

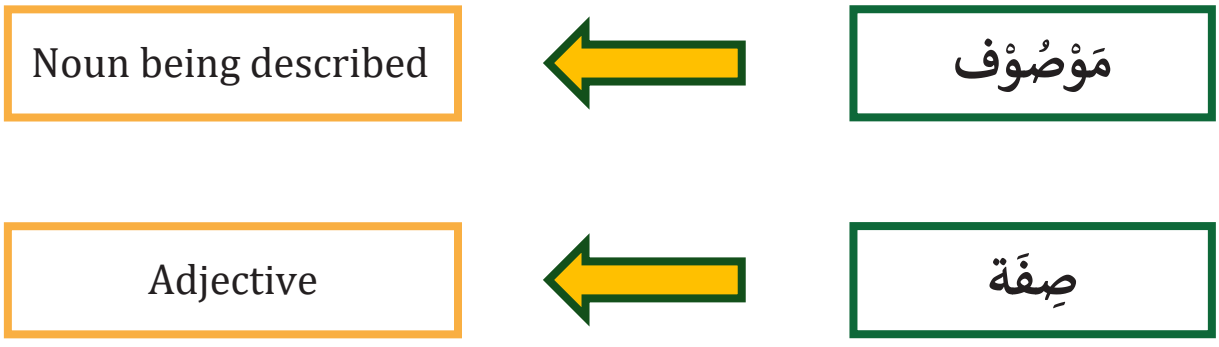
The Adjective Phrase - اَلْمُرَكَّبُ التَّوْصِيْفِيُّ

Any group of two or more words that are connected to give meaning is called a compound phrase (مُرَكَّب). Compound phrases are different from full sentences like the جُمْلَة اِسْمِيَّة and جُمْلَة فِعْلِيَّة. While the جُمْلَة اِسْمِيَّة is a complete sentence with a clear مُبْتَدَأ and خَبَر, a مُرَكَّب may not always form a complete sentence. It can be just a group of words that are meaningfully joined together.

Adjectives are descriptive words that provide information about a noun. In Arabic, adjectives can appear in both masculine and feminine forms to match the gender of the noun they are referring to. The adjective phrase consists of a noun and an adjective. For example:

A beautiful garden	بُسْتَانٌ جَمِيْلٌ
A fresh apple	تُفَّاحَةٌ طَازَجَةٌ

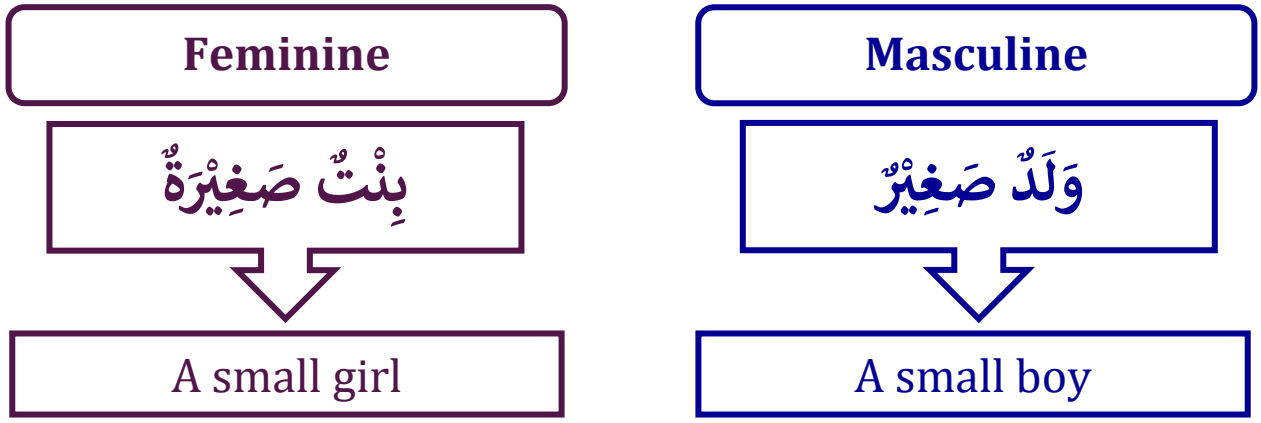
In the first example, the noun being described is بُسْتَانٌ which means garden whilst جَمِيْلٌ means beautiful and functions as the adjective. The noun being described is called مَوْصُوْف and the adjective is called صِفَة.



Rules related to the مَوْصُوْف and صِفَة:

1	The صِفَة must agree with the مَوْصُوْف in gender
2	The صِفَة must agree with the مَوْصُوْف in case
3	The صِفَة must agree with the مَوْصُوْف in number
4	The صِفَة must agree with the مَوْصُوْف in definiteness/indefiniteness

The first rule dictates that the صِفَة must agree with the noun in gender. If the noun being described is masculine, the صِفَة should also be masculine and if the noun is feminine, the صِفَة should also be feminine. For example:



The صِفَة in both the sentences above is the word 'small' which translates to صَغِيْرٌ in Arabic. In the sentence on the right, the masculine form of the adjective صَغِيْرٌ is used since the noun 'boy' is masculine. In the sentence on the left, the feminine form of the adjective is used since the noun being described is 'girl'. The adjective is made feminine by simply adding a *tāʾ marbūṭah* (ة) at the end:

The second rule dictates that the صِفَة must agree with the مَوْصُوْف in case. If the noun being described is مَرْفُوْع, the صِفَة should also be مَرْفُوْع and if the noun is مَنْصُوْب, the صِفَة should also be مَنْصُوْب and if the noun is مَجْرُوْر, the صِفَة should also be مَجْرُوْر. For example:

مَرْفُوْع	رَجُلٌ صَالِحٌ
مَنْصُوْب	رَجُلًا صَالِحًا
مَجْرُوْر	رَجُلٍ صَالِحٍ

The صِفَة in the sentences above is the word 'righteous' which translates to صَالِحٌ in Arabic. The case of the noun 'رَجُلٌ' affects the case of the adjective that follows.

Note: When a noun or adjective is مَنْصُوْب and indefinite i.e., it carries a *tanwīn*, an *alif* is added at the end: صَالِحًا = ا + صَالِحً.

The third rule states that the صِفَة must match the number of the مَوْصُوْف. When the مَوْصُوْف is singular, the صِفَة should be singular. Similarly, when the مَوْصُوْف is dual, the صِفَة should also be in dual form, and when the مَوْصُوْف is plural, the صِفَة should be plural as well. For example:

Plural	Dual	Singular
أَطِبَّاءُ مَاهِرُوْنَ	طَبِيْبَانِ مَاهِرَانِ	طَبِيْبٌ مَاهِرٌ
Many skilled doctors	Two Skilled doctors	A skilled doctor

The صِفَة in the sentences above is the word ‘skilled’ which translates to مَاهِرٌ in Arabic. The number of the noun ‘طَبِيْبٌ’ will determine the number of the صِفَة. If the noun is dual, the صِفَة will also be made dual by simply adding انِ in the مَرْفُوْع case and يْنِ in the مَنْصُوْب and مَجْرُوْر cases as you have learnt previously.

If the noun is a regular plural, the صِفَة will also be made plural by adding the relevant letters at the end of the adjective. As you learnt previously, the sound masculine plural is formed by adding ونَ at the end of the noun if it is in the مَرْفُوْع case and ينَ if the noun is in the مَنْصُوْب or مَجْرُوْر cases. In the previous example, the word مَاهِرُوْنَ is a regular masculine plural in the مَرْفُوْع case. If it were to be changed to the مَنْصُوْب or مَجْرُوْر cases, it would become: مَاهِرِيْنَ.

However, if the noun is feminine plural, you add اتٌ at the end of the noun if it is in the مَرْفُوْع case and اتٍ if the noun is in the مَنْصُوْب or مَجْرُوْر cases:

مَرْفُوْع	مَجْرُوْر/مَنْصُوْب
مَاهِرَاتٌ	مَاهِرَاتٍ

Lastly, if the noun is the plural of an inanimate object, the صِفَة will take the singular feminine form. For example:

أَقْلَامٌ جَدِيْدَةٌ	New pens
كُتُبٌ مَفْتُوْحَةٌ	Opened books

The last rule states that صِفَة must match the noun in definiteness. If the noun is definite, the صِفَة should be definite and if the noun is indefinite, the صِفَة should also be indefinite. For example:

Indefinite	Definite
اَلْكِتَابُ الْمُفِيْدُ	كِتَابٌ مُفِيْدٌ
The beneficial book	A beneficial book

The صِفَة in the sentences above is the word 'beneficial' which translates to مُفِيْدٌ in Arabic. In the sentence on the right, the noun كِتَابٌ is indefinite hence, the adjective مُفِيْدٌ is also indefinite.

The noun كِتَابٌ is made definite in the sentence on the left by adding the article ال hence, the adjective is also made definite by adding ال.

Below are a few adjective phrases presented in various forms. Read them carefully to understand how the صِفَة agrees with the noun in each form.

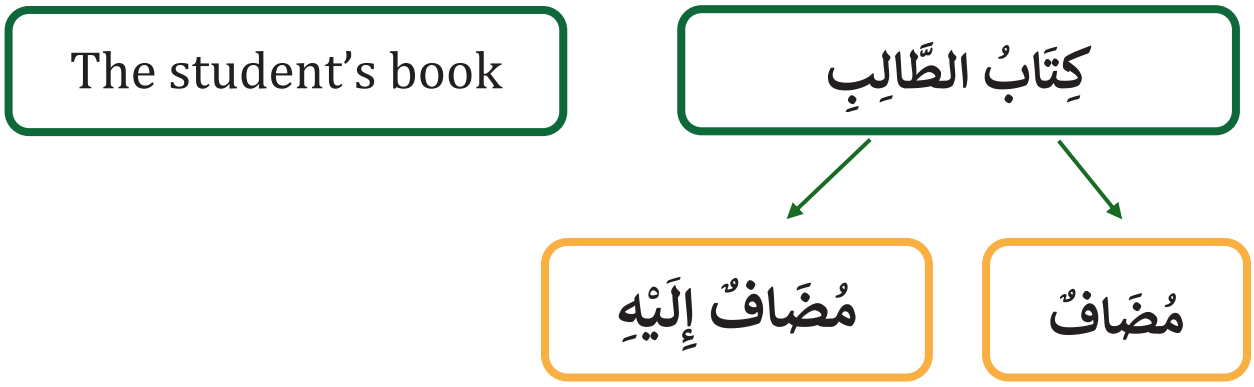
A smart student	طَالِبٌ ذَكِيٌّ
Two smart girls	بِنْتَانِ ذَكِيَّتَانِ
The new house	اَلْبَيْتِ الْجَدِيْدِ
Broken tables	طَاوِلَاتٌ مَكْسُوْرَةٌ
The tall man	اَلرَّجُلُ الطَّوِيْلُ
An old car	سَيَّارَةً قَدِيْمَةً
The two strong lions	اَلْأَسَدَيْنِ الْقَوِيَّيْنِ
The righteous Muslims (f)	اَلْمُسْلِمَاتُ الصَّالِحَاتُ
The righteous Muslims (m)	اَلْمُسْلِمُوْنَ الصَّالِحُوْنَ

Lesson 18

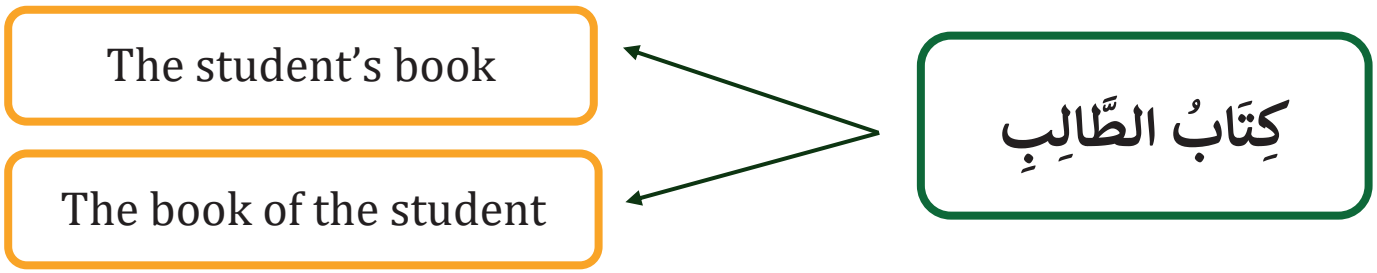
The Iḍāfah Phrase - اَلْمُرَكَّبُ الْإِضَافِيُّ

The second type of incomplete compound expression is the *iḍāfah* phrase. The *iḍāfah* phrase generally consists of two nouns that are related to each other through possession or association. These nouns together form a possessive relationship. The first term of the *iḍāfah* phrase is called مُضَافٌ whilst the second term is called مُضَافٌ إِلَيْهِ.

For example:



The مُضَاف refers to the noun that is being possessed and the مُضَاف إِلَيْهِ refers to the possessor. The *iḍāfah* phrase can be translated in two ways:



Although the word كِتَابُ does not carry the article ال it is still definite in meaning.

The *iḍāfah* phrase consists of the following rules:

1	The مُضَاف always comes first followed by the مُضَاف إِلَيْهِ
2	The مُضَاف can never carry the article ال nor can it carry a *tanwīn*
3	The مُضَاف إِلَيْهِ can be either a definite or indefinite noun
4	The مُضَاف إِلَيْهِ is always مَجْرُوْر

The girl's book	كِتَابُ الْبِنْتِ
The house of the man	بَيْتُ الرَّجُلِ

Note how the مُضَاف comes first in both examples followed by the مُضَاف إِلَيْهِ.

Zayd's pen	قَلَمُ زَيْدٍ
The door of the Mosque	بَابُ الْمَسْجِدِ

Note how the مُضَاف in the two examples above does not carry the article ال nor a *tanwīn*.

A boy's watch	سَاعَةُ وَلَدٍ
The boy's watch	سَاعَةُ الْوَلَدِ

Note how the مُضَاف إِلَيْهِ in the first example is indefinite and definite in the second example.

Allāh's Messenger	رَسُوْلُ اللهِ
The story of the Prophet	قِصَّةُ النَّبِيِّ

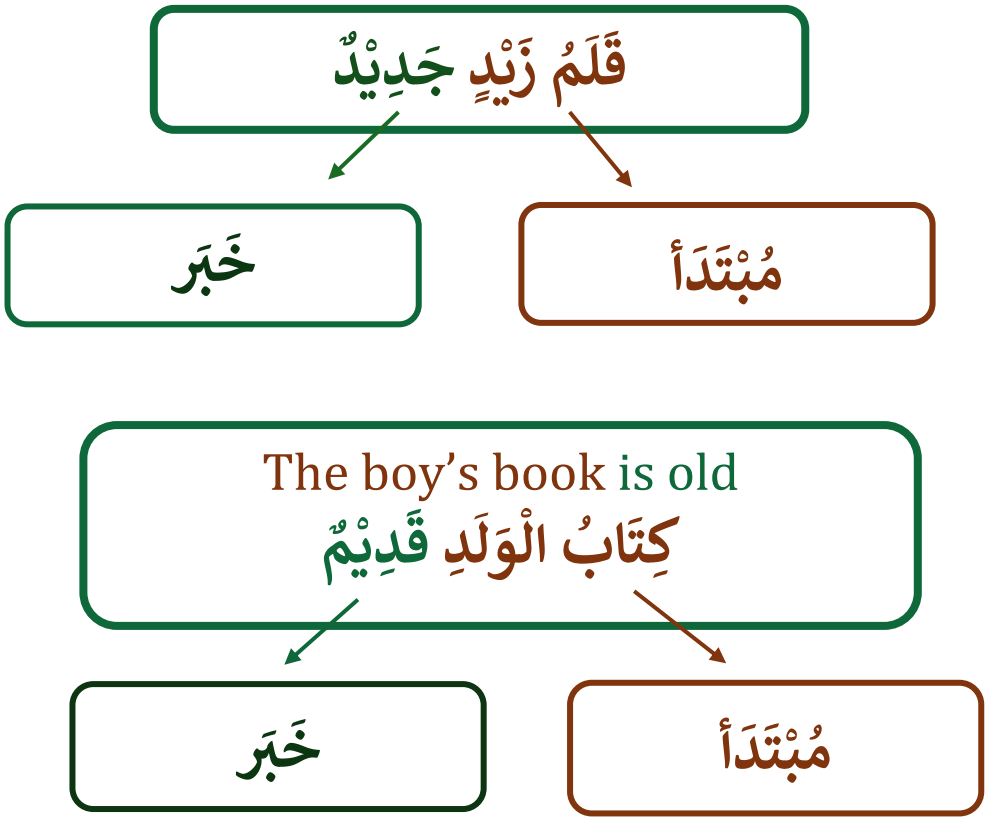
Note how the مُضَاف إِلَيْهِ in all the examples above is مَجْرُوْر.

The *Iḍāfah* Phrase as a مُبْتَدَأ

The *iḍāfah* phrase can appear as a مُبْتَدَأ in a nominal sentence. For example:

Zayd's pen is new	قَلَمُ زَيْدٍ جَدِيْدٌ

The words قَلَمُ زَيْدٍ form the *iḍāfah* phrase but also appear as a مُبْتَدَأ. The خَبَر is the word جَدِيْدٌ.



The rules of مُبْتَدَأ and خَبَر still apply here. Since the مُضَاف is taking the grammatical position of the مُبْتَدَأ, its number and gender will determine the form of the خَبَر. For instance, if the مُضَاف is dual, the خَبَر must also be dual; if the مُضَاف is plural, the خَبَر must be plural; and likewise, gender agreement must also be observed.

Dual and Plural Nouns as مُضَاف

Dual

In an *iḍāfah* phrase, when a dual noun appears as a مُضَاف, the ن of the dual noun is dropped regardless of the gender of the noun. For example:

كِتَابَا زَيْدٍ	=	زَيْدٌ	+	كِتَابَانِ
The two books of Zayd				
بِنْتَا الْمَدْرَسَةِ	=	اَلْمَدْرَسَةُ	+	بِنْتَانِ
The two girls of the school				

As evident from the two examples above, the ن of the dual noun is dropped irrespective of the gender of the noun when it appears as a مُضَاف.

Plural

Previously, you learnt the two types of plural nouns in Arabic: sound/regular and broken/irregular plurals. When a sound masculine plural appears as a مُضَاف, the ن of the plural noun is dropped only when the noun is masculine. For example:

مُعَلِّمُوْ الْمَدْرَسَةِ	=	اَلْمَدْرَسَةُ	+	مُعَلِّمُوْنَ
The school's teachers'				

This rule only applies to masculine plurals that are regular. The regular feminine plurals and irregular plurals do not undergo any changes:

Regular feminine plural	**Irregular plural**
مُعَلِّمَاتُ الْمَدْرَسَةِ	كُتُبُ الْمَكْتَبِ
Teachers (f) of the school	Books of the library

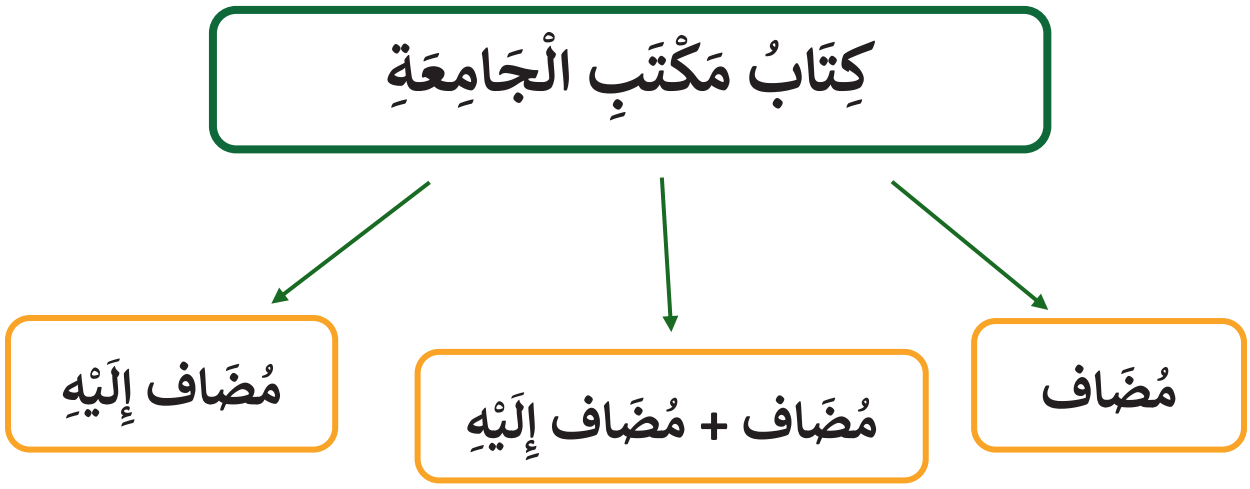
Below are a few more examples where the ن is dropped from a مُضَاف when it is in the dual or masculine sound plural form.

The two doors of the Mosque are open	بَابَا الْمَسْجِدِ مَفْتُوْحَانِ
The student's two pens are broken	قَلَمَا الطَّالِبِ مَكْسُوْرَانِ
The two teachers (f) of the university are hardworking	مُعَلِّمَتَا الْجَامِعَةِ مُجْتَهِدَتَانِ
The school's teachers are present	مُعَلِّمُو الْمَدْرَسَةِ حَاضِرُوْنَ
The Muslims of the country are united	مُسْلِمُو الْبَلَدِ مُتَّحِدُوْنَ
The factory workers are active	عَامِلُو الْمَصْنَعِ نَشِيْطُوْنَ
The two windows of the house are clean	نَافِذَتَا الْبَيْتِ نَظِيْفَتَانِ
The merchants of the market are wealthy	تَاجِرُو السُّوْقِ غَنِيُّوْنَ

Multiple مُضَاف and مُضَاف إِلَيْهِ

In some cases, there can be multiple مُضَاف and/or مُضَاف إِلَيْهِ in a single sentence. For example:

كِتَابُ مَكْتَبِ الْجَامِعَةِ
The book of the library of the university OR The book of the university's library



The example above shows that there are two مُضَاف and two مُضَاف إِلَيْهِ in one sentence. The word كِتَابُ serves as the first مُضَاف while مَكْتَبِ functions as both the مُضَاف إِلَيْهِ for the word preceding it and مُضَاف for the word after it which is اَلْجَامِعَةِ.

On the next page, you will find multiple examples of مُرَكَّب إِضَافِيّ used within sentences. Read through them carefully to observe how the rules you have learned so far are applied.

The teacher’s pen	قَلَمُ الْمُعَلِّمِ
The boy’s food	طَعَامُ الْوَلَدِ
Muḥammad’s mother is righteous	أُمُّ مُحَمَّدٍ صَالِحَةٌ
The teacher’s watch is expensive	سَاعَةُ الْمُعَلِّمِ غَالِيَةٌ
The window of the house is broken	نَافِذَةُ الْبَيْتِ مَكْسُوْرَةٌ
The girl’s hand is clean	يَدُ الْبِنْتِ نَظِيْفَةٌ
The student’s two friends are hardworking	صَدِيْقَا الطَّالِبِ مُجْتَهِدَانِ
The teacher’s books are beneficial	كُتُبُ الْمُدَرِّسِ مُفِيْدَةٌ
The girl’s two bags are new	حَقِيْبَتَا الْبِنْتِ جَدِيْدَتَانِ
The city’s engineers are skilful	مُهَنْدِسُو الْمَدِيْنَةِ مَاهِرُوْنَ
The messengers of Allāh are truthful	رُسُلُ اللهِ صَادِقُوْنَ
The seekers of knowledge are patient	طُلَّابُ الْعِلْمِ صَابِرُوْنَ
The key of the door of the house is lost	مِفْتَاحُ بَابِ الْبَيْتِ مَفْقُوْدٌ
The car of the father of the child is new	سَيَّارَةُ وَالِدِ الطِّفْلِ جَدِيْدَةٌ
The glasses of the student of the class are broken	نَظَّارَةُ طَالِبِ الْفَصْلِ مَكْسُوْرَةٌ

Lesson 19

The Use of بَعْضُ and كُلُّ

In Arabic, the words كُلُّ (all, whole, every, each) and بَعْضُ (some, a little, a few) are commonly used in *iḍāfah* (possessive) constructions. In such phrases, كُلُّ or بَعْضُ is the first term (مُضَاف), and the word that follows is the second term (مُضَاف إِلَيْهِ), which appears in the مَجْرُوْر case.

كُلُّ

1. When "all" is meant:

The noun after كُلُّ is plural and definite (has ال). For example:

All the students	كُلُّ الطُّلَّابِ
All the Muslims	كُلُّ الْمُسْلِمِيْنَ

كُلُّ can also be replaced with جَمِيْعُ and will give the same meaning. For example:

All the students	جَمِيْعُ الطُّلَّابِ
All the Muslims	جَمِيْعُ الْمُسْلِمِيْنَ

2. When "each" or "each one of" is meant:

The noun after كُلُّ is singular and indefinite. For example:

Each student	كُلُّ طَالِبٍ
Everything	كُلُّ شَيْءٍ

As seen in all four examples above, the word following كُلُّ is in the مَجْرُوْر case, whether it is definite or indefinite. This is because كُلُّ functions as a مُضَاف, and the word after it becomes a مُضَاف إِلَيْهِ, which is always مَجْرُوْر.

3. When "the whole" or "all of (a single thing)" is meant:

The noun after كُلُّ is singular and definite (has "ال"). For example:

The whole book	كُلُّ الْكِتَابِ
The whole lesson	كُلُّ الدَّرْسِ

بَعْضُ

The word بَعْضُ (some) is also used in *iḍāfah* constructions, where it acts as the مُضَاف and the following word is the مُضَاف إِلَيْهِ.

1. When the meaning is "some out of many":

The noun after بَعْضُ is plural and definite (has ال). For example:

Some of the students	بَعْضُ الطُّلَّابِ
Some of the teachers	بَعْضُ الْمُعَلِّمِيْنَ

2. When the meaning is "a little of something":

The noun after بَعْضُ is singular and definite (has ال). For example:

Some of the book	بَعْضُ الْكِتَابِ
Some of the food	بَعْضُ الطَّعَامِ

The إِعْرَاب of بَعْضُ and كُلُّ can change depending on their position in a sentence. They can appear as كُلَّ, كُلِّ, or كُلُّ, and likewise بَعْضَ, بَعْضِ, or بَعْضُ.

In all the previous examples, the phrases are incomplete sentences. A *khabar* can be added to complete them. On the next page, you will find various examples showing the different forms of بَعْضُ and كُلُّ as they appear in full sentences.

All the students are hardworking	كُلُّ الطُّلَّابِ مُجْتَهِدُوْنَ
All the teachers are present	كُلُّ الْمُعَلِّمِيْنَ حَاضِرُوْنَ
All the men are Muslims	كُلُّ الرِّجَالِ مُسْلِمُوْنَ
Each student is active	كُلُّ طَالِبٍ نَشِيْطٌ
Each boy is well-mannered	كُلُّ وَلَدٍ مُهَذَّبٌ
Each teacher is patient	كُلُّ مُعَلِّمٍ صَابِرٌ
Some of the students (f) are sleeping	بَعْضُ الطَّالِبَاتِ نَائِمَاتٌ
Some of the men are absent	بَعْضُ الرِّجَالِ غَائِبُوْنَ
Some of the children are present	بَعْضُ الْأَطْفَالِ حَاضِرُوْنَ
Some of the food is cold	بَعْضُ الطَّعَامِ بَارِدٌ
Some of the salad is good	بَعْضُ السَّلْطَةِ طَيِّبَةٌ
Some of the article is beneficial	بَعْضُ الْمَقَالَةِ مُفِيْدَةٌ
Each girl is intelligent	كُلُّ بِنْتٍ ذَكِيَّةٌ
Each car is fast	كُلُّ سَيَّارَةٍ سَرِيْعَةٌ
All of the bags are heavy	كُلُّ الْحَقَائِبِ ثَقِيْلَةٌ
All of the female students are successful	كُلُّ الطَّالِبَاتِ نَاجِحَاتٌ

Lesson 20

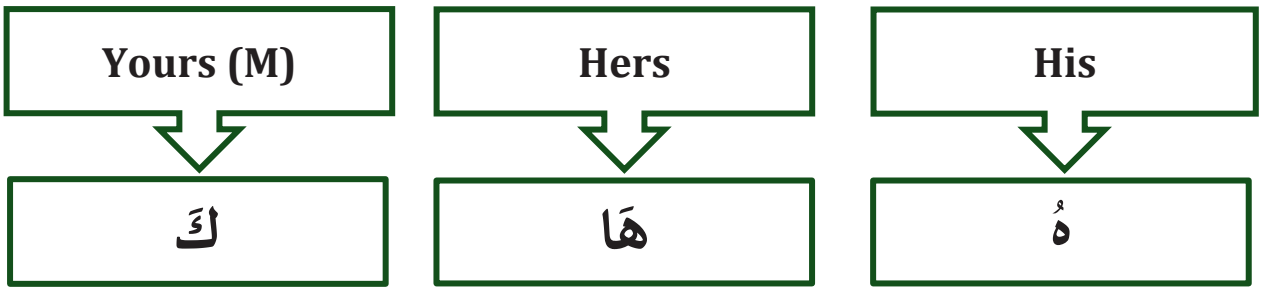
Attached Pronouns - اَلضَّمَائِرُ الْمُتَّصِلَةُ

You have previously learnt that pronouns in Arabic are divided into attached and detached forms. The 14 detached pronouns have already been covered. In this lesson, you will learn the 14 attached pronouns.

The following rules apply to attached pronouns:

- They cannot stand alone - they must be attached to a noun, verb, or particle.
- When attached to nouns (in إِضَافَة) or to particles (like prepositions), they appear in the مَجْرُوْر case.
- When attached to verbs as subjects, they appear in the مَرْفُوْع case and function as the subject.
- When attached to verbs, they act as objects and appear in the مَنْصُوْب case (this will be covered later after we learn verbs).

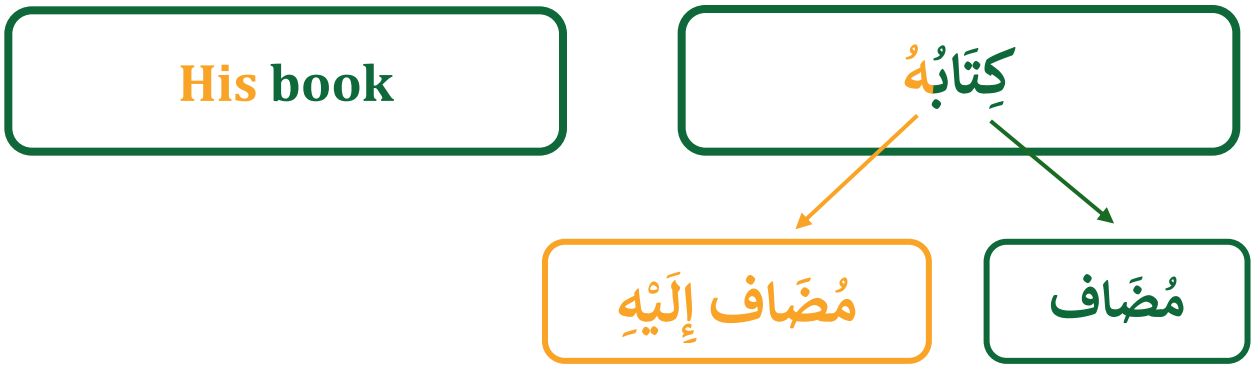
For example:



His book	كِتَابُهُ	=	كِتَابُ + هُ
Her book	كِتَابُهَا	=	كِتَابُ + هَا
Your book	كِتَابُكَ	=	كِتَابُ + كَ

Third Person	Masculine	Singular	هُ
		Dual	هُمَا
		Plural	هُمْ
	Feminine	Singular	هَا
		Dual	هُمَا
		Plural	هُنَّ
Second Person	Masculine	Singular	كَ
		Dual	كُمَا
		Plural	كُمْ
	Feminine	Singular	كِ
		Dual	كُمَا
		Plural	كُنَّ
First Person	Masculine and Feminine	Singular	يْ
		Plural	نَا

When any of the 14 attached pronouns are added to a noun, the noun becomes the مُضَاف and the pronoun becomes the مُضَاف إِلَيْهِ. For example:



The table below shows how the word كِتَابٌ changes when joined with each of the 14 attached pronouns.

كِتَابُهُ	كِتَابُهُمَا	كِتَابُهُمْ
كِتَابُهَا	كِتَابُهُمَا	كِتَابُهُنَّ
كِتَابُكَ	كِتَابُكُمَا	كِتَابُكُمْ
كِتَابُكِ	كِتَابُكُمَا	كِتَابُكُنَّ
كِتَابِيْ	كِتَابُنَا	

The Arabic word for 'book' is كِتَابٌ, but when a pronoun is attached to it, the *tanwīn* is dropped, changing it to كِتَابُ, and the attached pronoun is then added.

In all of the above examples, the word كِتَابُ has a *ḍammah* at the end except when attached to the first person pronoun it appears with a *kasrah* (كِتَابِ) then the ي is added, and it becomes كِتَابِيْ. The reason for the *kasrah* on the letter ب is to facilitate easier reading.

His car is fast	سَيَّارَتُهُ سَرِيْعَةٌ
Their (m/f.dual.) school is far	مَدْرَسَتُهُمَا بَعِيْدَةٌ
Their (m. pl.) room is spacious	غُرْفَتُهُمْ وَاسِعَةٌ
Her watch is new	سَاعَتُهَا جَدِيْدَةٌ
Their (f.d.) pair of glasses is expensive	نَظَّارَتُهُمَا غَالِيَةٌ
Their (f.p.) tables are clean	طَاوِلَاتُهُنَّ نَظِيْفَةٌ
Your (m.s.) pen is broken	قَلَمُكَ مَكْسُوْرٌ
Your (m.d.) house is near	مَنْزِلُكُمَا قَرِيْبٌ
Your (m.pl.) clothes are torn	مَلَابِسُكُمْ مُمَزَّقَةٌ
Your (f.s.) bag is heavy	حَقِيْبَتُكِ ثَقِيْلَةٌ
Your (m/f. dual) two rulers are broken	مِسْطَرَتَاكُمَا مَكْسُوْرَتَانِ
Your (f. pl.) exercise books are new	كُرَّاسَاتُكُنَّ جَدِيْدَةٌ
My book is beneficial	كِتَابِيْ مُفِيْدٌ
Our mosque is big	مَسْجِدُنَا كَبِيْرٌ

Lesson 21

Prepositions - اَلْحُرُوْفُ الْجَارَّةُ

In Lesson 1, you learnt that every word in Arabic falls into one of three categories: اِسْم (noun), فِعْل (verb), or حَرْف (particle).

A حَرْف is a type of word that does not carry a complete meaning on its own. Rather, it plays a grammatical role by linking or modifying other words - such as nouns or verbs - to complete the sentence's meaning. There are many different kinds of particles in Arabic. In this lesson, you will focus on one of them: حُرُوفُ الْجَرِّ (prepositions).

A preposition is a word that comes before a noun and affects its grammatical case, making it مَجْرُوْر. The preposition itself does not carry a full meaning on its own, but it connects the noun that follows it to the rest of the sentence. There are a total of 17 prepositions in Arabic.

وَ	لِ	كَ	تَ	بِ
By (oath)	For/Belonging to	Like / As	By (oath)	With / By (oath)
حَاشَا	رُبَّ	خَلَا	مُذْ	مُنْذُ
Except	Perhaps / Many of	Except	Since (time)	Since (time)
عَلٰى	عَنْ	فِيْ	عَدَا	مِنْ
On / upon	About / Away from	In	Except	From
إِلٰى			حَتّٰى	
To			Till / Until	

Below are a few important rules to keep in mind when using prepositions:

- The noun that follows a preposition is called اِسْم مَجْرُوْر.
- The noun that follows a preposition will always be مَجْرُوْر.
- When a pronoun follows a preposition, it appears in its attached form, the same as when used as a مُضَاف إِلَيْهِ. For example:

From him	مِنْهُ	〓	مِنْ + هُ
About her	عَنْهَا	〓	عَنْ + هَا
In you	فِيْكَ	〓	فِيْ + كَ

When a preposition like بِ (with) or فِي (in) is followed by the attached pronoun هُ (him/it), the vowel on the pronoun changes depending on the vowel at the end of the preposition. This is done to make pronunciation smoother. For example:

With him	بِهِ	〓	بِ + هُ
In him	فِيْهِ	〓	فِيْ + هُ

- Similarly, when the preposition لِ (for) is added to a pronoun, it changes to لَ for easier reading. For example:

For him	لَهُ	〓	لِ + هُ
For her	لَهَا	〓	لِ + هَا

- In writing, one-letter prepositions such as بِ، تَ، كَ، لِ are directly joined with the noun following it. For example:

With the pen	بِالْقَلَمِ		بِ + الْقَلَمِ
Like the lion	كَالْأَسَدِ		كَ + الْأَسَدِ

In the case of لِ followed by a word beginning with ال, the *alif* of ال is dropped before attaching لِ. For example:

For Allāh	لِلّٰهِ		لِ + اللّٰهِ
For the teacher	لِلْمُعَلِّمِ		لِ + الْمُعَلِّمِ

- When prepositions like مِنْ and عَنْ, which normally end with a *sukūn* on the last letter, are followed by a word beginning with the definite article ال, their *sukūn* is changed to a *fatḥah* (مِنَ) or a *kasrah* (عَنِ) respectively. This adjustment is made to facilitate pronunciation and ease of reading. For example:

From the library	مِنَ الْمَكْتَبِ		مِنْ + الْمَكْتَبِ
About the student	عَنِ الطَّالِبِ		عَنْ + الطَّالِبِ

- When إِلَى (to) or عَلَى (on/upon) is followed by a pronoun, the pronoun must appear in its attached form. The result is a single connected word, often with an inserted ى to ease pronunciation and maintain grammatical structure. For example:

To him	إِلَيْهِ		إِلَى + هُ
About you	عَلَيْكَ		عَلَى + كَ

Below are examples of commonly used prepositions in sentences. Read them carefully and observe how the rules you've learnt are applied in each sentence. The examples of some prepositions have been intentionally left out, as their correct usage depends on verbs or other aspects of Arabic grammar that you have not yet studied.

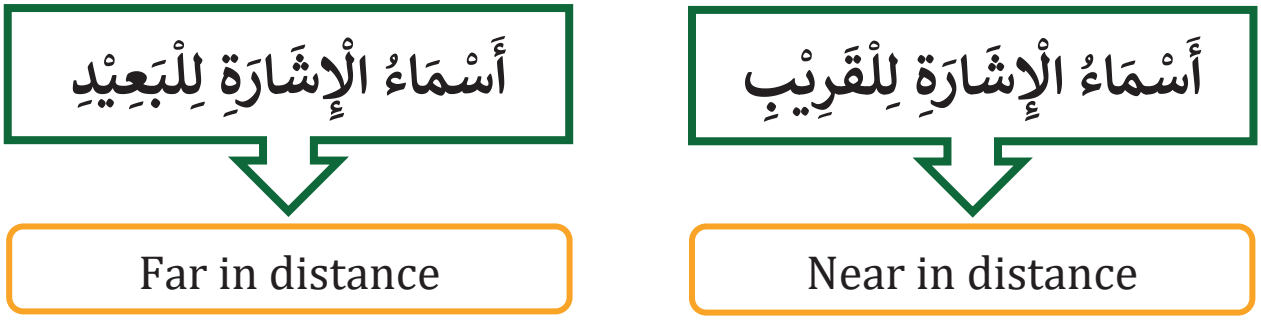
The book is in the bag	اَلْكِتَابُ فِي الْحَقِيْبَةِ
The notebook is on the table	اَلدَّفْتَرُ عَلَى الطَّاوِلَةِ
The student is in the school	اَلطَّالِبُ فِي الْمَدْرَسَةِ
The pen belongs to Zayd	اَلْقَلَمُ لِزَيْدٍ
Zayd is like a lion	زَيْدٌ كَالْأَسَدِ
"By (oath) the time"	وَالْعَصْرِ
The food is from the restaurant	اَلطَّعَامُ مِنَ الْمَطْعَمِ
The call is to the truth	اَلدَّعْوَةُ إِلَى الْحَقِّ
The travel is until the city	اَلسَّفَرُ حَتَّى الْمَدِيْنَةِ
The speech is with wisdom	اَلْكَلَامُ بِالْحِكْمَةِ
The book is about history	اَلْكِتَابُ عَنِ التَّارِيْخِ
The teacher is in the classroom	اَلْمُدَرِّسُ فِي الْفَصْلِ

Lesson 22

Demonstrative Pronouns - أَسْمَاءُ الْإِشَارَةِ

Demonstrative pronouns are a type of definite noun used to point to specific people, places, or things.

In Arabic, demonstrative pronouns are divided into two categories:



These pronouns are used to refer to objects or individuals either near or far in distance. Demonstrative pronouns in Arabic also change based on gender, case and number. Below is a list of all the demonstrative pronouns for near objects, shown according to their case, number, and gender.

أَسْمَاءُ الْإِشَارَةِ لِلْقَرِيْبِ			
Number-case	Masculine	Feminine	Translation
Singular - all cases	هٰذَا	هٰذِهِ	This
Dual - مَرْفُوْع	هٰذَانِ	هَاتَانِ	These (2)
Dual – مَجْرُوْر & مَنْصُوْب	هٰذَيْنِ	هَاتَيْنِ	These (2)
Plural - All cases	هٰؤُلَآءِ		All of these

Below is a list of all the demonstrative pronouns for far objects, shown according to their case, number, and gender.

أَسْمَاءُ الْإِشَارَةِ لِلْبَعِيْدِ			
Number-case	Masculine	Feminine	Translation
Singular - all cases	ذٰلِكَ	تِلْكَ	That
Dual - مَرْفُوْع	ذَانِكَ	تَانِكَ	Those (2)
Dual – مَجْرُوْر & مَنْصُوْب	ذَيْنِكَ	تَيْنِكَ	Those (2)
Plural - All cases	أُولٰٓئِكَ		All of those

Important notes:

- In both near and far demonstrative pronouns, the plural form is the same for both genders. For example:

These are men	هٰٓؤُلَآءِ رِجَالٌ
Those are women	أُولٰٓئِكَ نِسَاءٌ

- The regular plural form (e.g. هٰٓؤُلَآءِ for near and أُولٰٓئِكَ for far) is used when referring to humans.
- Inanimate objects and animals are treated as singular feminine in Arabic grammar. As a result, هٰذِهِ is used to refer to them when they are near and تِلْكَ is used when they are far. For example:

These are books	هٰذِهِ كُتُبٌ
Those are pens	تِلْكَ أَقْلَامٌ

- The noun or object being referred to by a demonstrative pronoun is called the مُشَارٌ إِلَيْهِ (the thing pointed to). For example:

هٰذَا طَالِبٌ	
هٰذَا	طَالِبٌ
اِسْمُ الْإِشَارَةِ	مُشَارٌ إِلَيْهِ

- Demonstrative pronouns must agree with the noun in gender, number, and case, except with inanimate plurals, where the singular form is used.
- Sometimes ذَاكَ is used, which is a demonstrative pronoun for the singular masculine. It points to something at a medium distance - farther than هٰذَا but closer than ذٰلِكَ.
- The following examples illustrate how demonstrative pronouns are used in sentences and how they correspond with the nouns that come after them.

This is a student (m)	هٰذَا طَالِبٌ
This is a student (f)	هٰذِهِ طَالِبَةٌ
These are two boys	هٰذَانِ وَلَدَانِ
These are two girls	هَاتَانِ بِنْتَانِ
These are Muslims (m)	هٰؤُلَآءِ مُسْلِمُوْنَ
That is a book	ذٰلِكَ كِتَابٌ
That is an apple	تِلْكَ تُفَّاحَةٌ
Those are two keys	ذٰنِكَ مِفْتَاحَانِ
Those are two bags	تَانِكَ حَقِيْبَتَانِ
Those are Muslims (f)	أُولٰئِكَ مُسْلِمَاتٌ

The Dual Demonstrative Pronouns

Singular and plural demonstrative pronouns remain the same regardless of the grammatical case of the noun they refer to. For example:

مَرْفُوْع	مَجْرُوْر	مَنْصُوْب
هٰذَا كِتَابٌ	مِنْ هٰذَا الْكِتَابِ	أَقْرَأُ هٰذَا الْكِتَابَ

As you can see from the examples above, the word كِتَابٌ appears in all three cases. However, the demonstrative pronoun هٰذَا does not change. The same applies for the rest of the demonstrative pronouns except for the dual form.

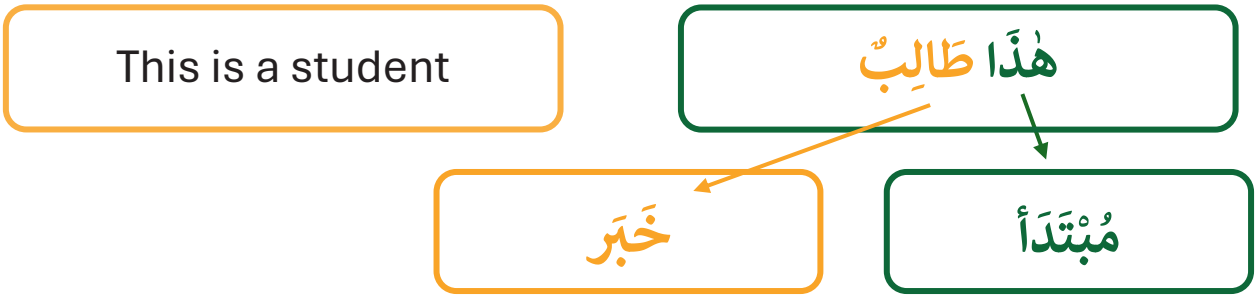
When a dual noun is being referred to and it is in the مَنْصُوْب and مَجْرُوْر cases, it undergoes slight changes. For example:

مَرْفُوْع	مَجْرُوْر	مَنْصُوْب
هٰذَانِ قَلَمَانِ	فِيْ هٰذَيْنِ الْبَيْتَيْنِ	اٰكُلُ هَاتَيْنِ التُّفَّاحَتَيْنِ
These are two pens	In these two houses	I am eating these two apples
تَانِكَ طَاوِلَتَانِ	فِيْ تَيْنِكَ الْكُرَّاسَتَيْنِ	أَكْتُبُ تَيْنِكَ الرِّسَالَتَيْنِ
Those are two tables	In those two notebooks	I am writing those two letters

The Demonstrative Pronouns as مُبْتَدَأ (subject)

A demonstrative pronoun can appear in two ways:

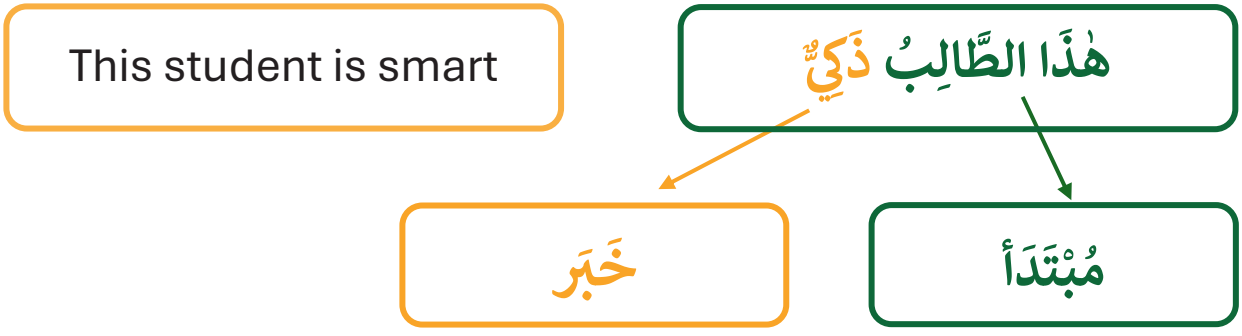
1) In a complete nominal sentence (جُمْلَة اِسْمِيَّة) where it serves as the مُبْتَدَأ and is followed by a خَبَر. For example:



2) In an incomplete phrase, where it is followed by a definite noun but still requires a خَبَر to complete the meaning. For example:

This student	هٰذَا الطَّالِبُ

In the example above, the phrase does not translate as "This is the student" but rather simply as "This student." It remains incomplete and needs a خَبَر to form a full sentence. It will remain as a مُرَكَّب نَاقِص (an incomplete phrase) until a خَبَر is added.



In the example above, the phrase "هٰذَا الطَّالِبُ" together forms the مُبْتَدَأ, while "ذَكِيٌّ" serves as the خَبَر. This completes the sentence, turning it into a جُمْلَة اِسْمِيَّة (nominal sentence).

The following passage is about 'My Family'. Read it carefully and observe how the rules of demonstrative pronouns are being applied.

My Family

هٰذِهِ أُسْرَتِيْ

اِسْمِيْ أَحْمَدُ. هٰذَا أَبِيْ، وَتِلْكَ أُمِّيْ. هٰذَانِ جَدِّيْ وَعَمِّيْ، وَتَانِكَ جَدَّتِيْ وَعَمَّتِيْ. هٰذَا صَدِيْقِيْ خَالِدٌ، وَذٰلِكَ أَبُوْهُ، وَهٰذِهِ أُمُّهُ. ذٰلِكَ أَخُوْهُ، وَهٰذِهِ أُخْتُهُ. هٰذَانِ عَمُّهُ وَعَمَّتُهُ، وَ هٰذَانِ جَدُّهُ وَجَدَّتُهُ. تِلْكَ فَاطِمَةُ، وَهٰذَا أَبُوْهَا، وَتِلْكَ أُمُّهَا. ذَانِكَ عَمُّهَا وَجَدُّهَا، وَهَاتَانِ عَمَّتُهَا وَجَدَّتُهَا. أُولٰئِكَ إِخْوَتِيْ وَأَخَوَاتِيْ، وَهٰؤُلَآءِ أَقَارِبِيْ.

My name is Aḥmad. This is my father, and that is my mother. These are my grandfather and my uncle, and those are my grandmother and my aunt. This is my friend Khālid, and that is his father, and this is his mother. That is his brother, and this is his sister. These are his uncle and his aunt, and these are his grandfather and his grandmother. That is Fāṭimah, and this is her father, and that is her mother. Those are her uncle and her grandfather, and these are her aunt and her grandmother. Those are my brothers and sisters, and these are my relatives.

Lesson 23

Relative Pronouns - اَلْأَسْمَاءُ الْمَوْصُوْلَةُ

A relative pronoun is a type of definite noun that connects what comes before it to a sentence that follows. This following sentence gives more information and is called صِلَةُ الْمَوْصُولِ (the relative clause). The صِلَةُ الْمَوْصُولِ complements and clarifies the meaning initiated by the relative pronoun. It is called a "relative" pronoun because it links or relates a noun or verb before it with the clause that follows.

In English, relative pronouns are usually translated as "who", "that", or "which". For example:

The book that is on the table is new	اَلْكِتَابُ الَّذِيْ عَلَى الطَّاوِلَةِ جَدِيْدٌ

صِلَةُ الْمَوْصُوْلِ

اِسْمٌ مَوْصُوْلٌ

The relative pronoun الَّذِي links 'the book' to more information 'that is on the table'. Without the relative pronoun, the sentence would be:

The book is on the table	اَلْكِتَابُ عَلَى الطَّاوِلَةِ

☑ The Difference:

The second sentence gives basic information. The first sentence gives more detail about which book we're talking about. The word الَّذِي is what makes that possible - it's the relative pronoun that joins the noun to the extra description.

The relative pronoun takes on the meaning of ‘who’ when referring to rational beings and ‘what’ when referring to irrational beings in a sentence. For example:

اَلطَّالِبُ الَّذِيْ فِي الْفَصْلِ ذَكِيٌّ
The student **who** is in the room is smart
اَلْقَلَمُ الَّذِيْ عَلَى الطَّاوِلَةِ قَدِيْمٌ
The pen **that** is on the table is old

Just like demonstrative pronouns, the singular and plural relative pronouns do not change with grammatical case. Only the dual form changes depending on the case.

اَلْأَسْمَاءُ الْمَوْصُوْلَةُ			
Number-case	Masculine	Feminine	Translation
Singular - all cases	اَلَّذِيْ	اَلَّتِيْ	Who/That
Dual - مَرْفُوْع	اَلَّذَانِ	اَلَّتَانِ	Who/That
Dual – مَجْرُوْر & مَنْصُوْب	اَلَّذَيْنِ	اَلَّتَيْنِ	Who/That
Plural – All cases	اَلَّذِيْنَ	اَلَّاتِيْ	Who/That

The plural feminine relative pronoun can appear in three different forms. One form has already been described above, while the other two are:

اَلَّوَاتِيْ	اَلَّئِيْ

There are numerous other types of relative pronouns in Arabic which include:

مَا	مَنْ	أَيٌّ	أَيَّةٌ
what/that which	who/the one who	whoever/whichever (masculine)	whoever/whichever (feminine)

مَا

This type of relative pronoun is only used when referring to inanimate objects. For example:

مَا فِي الْحَقِيْبَةِ مُفِيْدٌ
What is in the bag is useful

مَنْ

This type of relative pronoun is only used when referring to humans. For example:

مَنْ فِي الْفَصْلِ مُعَلِّمٌ
The one who is in the classroom is a teacher

أَيٌّ + أَيَّةٌ

This type of relative pronoun can be used for both humans and inanimate objects in the masculine and feminine forms. أَيٌّ is used for masculine while أَيَّةٌ is used for feminine.

The اِسْم مَوْصُوْل (أَيٌّ) or (أَيَّةُ) may appear in a sentence as a مُضَاف. When this occurs, the word that follows is treated as its مُضَاف إِلَيْهِ and will appear in the مَجْرُوْر case. However, أَيٌّ and أَيَّةُ can also appear without being in an *iḍāfah* construction - in such cases, they are declined based on their grammatical position in the sentence. For example:

أَيُّ الْفَرِيْقَيْنِ خَيْرٌ
Which of the two groups is best
أَيَّةُ الْمَرْأَةِ قَائِمَةٌ
Which woman is standing

Below are several sentences featuring different relative pronouns.

The book that is on the chair belongs to my friend	اَلْكِتَابُ الَّذِيْ عَلَى الْكُرْسِيِّ لِصَدِيْقِيْ
The bag that is on the table belongs to my teacher (female)	اَلْحَقِيْبَةُ الَّتِي عَلَى الطَّاوِلَةِ لِمُعَلِّمَتِيْ
The two books that are on the shelf are new	اَلْكِتَابَانِ الَّذَانِ عَلَى الرَّفِّ جَدِيْدَانِ
The two girls that are in the class are hardworking	اَلْبِنْتَانِ الَّتَانِ فِي الفَصْلِ مُجْتَهِدَتَانِ
The students who are in the classroom are energetic	اَلطُّلَّابُ الَّذِيْنَ فِي الْفَصْلِ نَشِيْطُوْنَ
The girls who are in the garden are happy	اَلْبَنَاتُ الَّاتِيْ فِي الْحَدِيْقَةِ سَعِيْدَاتٌ
The Muslim women who are in the masjid are humble	اَلْمُسْلِمَاتُ الَّئِيْ فِي الْمَسْجِدِ خَاشِعَاتٌ
The one who is in the house is a guest	مَنْ فِي البَيْتِ ضَيْفٌ
What is on the table is a book	مَا عَلَى الطَّاوِلَةِ كِتَابٌ
Whichever student is in the class is hardworking	أَيُّ طَالِبٍ فِي الْفَصْلِ مُجْتَهِدٌ

Lesson 24

Declinable And Non-Declinable - اَلْمُعْرَبُ وَ الْمَبْنِيُّ

Another classification of a noun is: مُعْرَب and مَبْنِيّ forms.

اَلْمُعْرَبُ

It is the noun whose final letter changes - sometimes it takes *ḍammah*, sometimes *fatḥah*, sometimes *kasrah*. This change does not occur on its own; there is always something that causes the change. This is called the عَامِلٌ (agent of change). The change that occurs due to the عَامِل is known as إِعْرَاب. For example:

The book is beneficial	اَلْكِتَابُ مُفِيْدٌ
I read the book	قَرَأْتُ الْكِتَابَ
The key is on the book	اَلْمِفْتَاحُ عَلَى الْكِتَابِ

In all three sentences, the same word اَلْكِتَاب appears, but in each sentence, the final letter and its vowel have changed. In the first sentence, it ends with a *ḍammah*, in the second with a *fatḥah*, and in the third with a *kasrah*. This is due to different grammatical roles and vowel markings (إِعْرَاب).

اَلْمَبْنِيُّ

This refers to a word that does not change regardless of the agent (عَامِل) that acts upon it. In other words, it always stays in the same state. For example:

This book is beneficial	هٰذَا الْكِتَابُ مُفِيْدٌ
I read this book	قَرَأْتُ هٰذَا الْكِتَابَ
The key is on this book	اَلْمِفْتَاحُ عَلٰى هٰذَا الْكِتَابِ

These are three sentences in which the word هٰذَا appears in each case. You'll notice that even though الْكِتَاب changes but هٰذَا remains unchanged in all three. Such a word is called مَبْنِيّ.

Most common nouns in Arabic are مُعْرَب, while verbs are generally مَبْنِيّ. Details regarding verbs will be discussed later. The categories of مَبْنِيّ nouns are as follows:

Demonstrative pronouns (except the dual forms)	أَسْمَاءُ الْإِشَارَةِ
Relative pronouns (except the dual forms)	اَلْأَسْمَاءُ الْمَوْصُوْلَةُ
Interrogative nouns	أَسْمَاءُ الْاِسْتِفْهَامِ
Conditional nouns	أَسْمَاءُ الشَّرْطِ
Some adverbs	بَعْضُ الظُّرُوْفِ
Pronouns	اَلضَّمَائِرُ
Sound words (onomatopoeic expressions)	أَسْمَاءُ الْأَصْوَاتِ
Allusive nouns	أَسْمَاءُ الْكِنَايَاتِ
Verbal nouns	أَسْمَاءُ الْأَفْعَالِ

Lesson 25

Interrogative Particles - أَسْمَاءُ الْاِسْتِفْهَامِ

In this lesson, we will explore the interrogative particles in Arabic, which are words used to ask questions or seek information about something.

Some of the most commonly used interrogative particles are listed below:

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
Who	مَنْ	What	مَا/مَاذَا
Where	أَيْنَ	When	مَتَى
How much/many	كَمْ	How	كَيْفَ
Which	أَيَّةٌ / أَيٌّ	Why	لِمَاذَا
(Question used to form yes/no questions)			هَلْ/أَ

مَا (what):

This particle is used for asking questions about inanimate objects and animals. For example:

What is this?	مَا هٰذَا؟
What is that?	مَا ذٰلِكَ؟
What is your name?	مَا اسْمُكَ؟

The interrogative particle مَا can combine with various prepositions to create different meanings in Arabic. For example:

From what? ⇦ مِنْ + مَا = مِمَّ

Note: When asking a question (i.e. in interrogative sentences), the *alif* of مَا is dropped if preceded by a preposition, leaving the *fatḥah* (the short vowel) as an indicator of it. For example:

*"So let man observe **from what** he was created"*	فَلْيَنْظُرِ الْإِنسَانُ مِمَّ خُلِقَ

About what? ⇐ عَمَّ = عَنْ + مَا

*"**About what** are they asking one another?"*	عَمَّ يَتَسَآءَلُوْنَ

For what? ⇐ لِمَ = لِ + مَا

When لِ and مَا are combined, they generally give the meaning of 'why'. لِمَ can also be replaced by لِمَاذَا.

*"O People of the Scripture, **why** do you argue about Abraham"*	يٰٓأَهْلَ الْكِتٰبِ لِمَ تُحَآجُّوْنَ فِيْٓ إِبْرَاهِيْمَ

مَنْ (who):

This particle is used to ask questions about human beings. For example:

Who are you?	مَنْ أَنْتَ؟
Who is this?	مَنْ هٰذَا؟
Who is in the room?	مَنْ فِي الْغُرْفَةِ؟

مَنْ can also be combined with prepositions. For example:

From who? ⇐ مِمَّنْ = مِنْ + مَنْ

From whom is this book?	مِمَّنْ هٰذَا الكِتَابُ؟

For who/whose? ⇦ لِ + مَنْ = لِمَنْ

لِمَنِ الْمُلْكُ الْيَوْمَ	*"**Whose** is the kingdom this Day?"*

أَيْنَ (where):

This particle is used to ask about places. For example:

أَيْنَ بَيْتُكَ؟	Where is your house?
مِنْ أَيْنَ أَنْتَ؟	Where are you from?
أَيْنَ الطَّالِبُ الْجَدِيْدُ؟	Where is the new student?

مَتٰى (when):

This particle is used for asking about time. For example:

مَتَى الْعِيْدُ؟	When is 'Eīd?
مَتٰى هٰذَا الْوَعْدُ	*"When will this promise be?"*

كَيْفَ (how):

This particle is used to ask about the state or condition of something. For example:

كَيْفَ حَالُكَ؟	How are you?
كَيْفَ الْجَوُّ؟	How is the weather?
أَفَلَا يَنْظُرُوْنَ إِلَى الْإِبِلِ كَيْفَ خُلِقَتْ	*"Do they not look at the camels - how they were created?"*

كَمْ (how many):

This particle is used for asking about numbers and measures. The noun that follows it is always singular, indefinite, and in the مَنْصُوْب case. For example:

How many books?	كَمْ كِتَابًا؟
How many days are there in the week?	كَمْ يَوْمًا فِي الْأُسْبُوْعِ؟
How many chairs are in your room?	كَمْ كُرْسِيًّا فِيْ غُرْفَتِكَ؟

For asking about prices, بِكَمْ is used. For example:

How much is this book?	بِكَمْ هٰذَا الْكِتَابُ؟
How much is that bag?	بِكَمْ تِلْكَ الْحَقِيْبَةُ؟

أَيٌّ / أَيَّةٌ: (which)

أَيٌّ (masculine) and أَيَّةٌ (feminine) are used to ask about selection or specification within a group, meaning 'which'.

أَيٌّ and أَيَّةٌ must match the gender of the noun they refer to.

أَيٌّ and أَيَّةٌ are always in an *iḍāfah* (possessive) construction with the noun following them. The noun following أَيٌّ or أَيَّةٌ is always indefinite and in the genitive case (مَجْرُوْر). For example:

Which book?	أَيُّ كِتَابٍ؟
Which girl?	أَيَّةُ بِنْتٍ؟
Which student in the class?	أَيُّ طَالِبٍ فِي الْفَصْلِ؟

هَلْ / أَ: (is/did/are)

Both هَلْ and أَ are particles used to form yes/no questions in Arabic. They are placed at the beginning of the sentence. For example:

Is this a book?	هَلْ هٰذَا كِتَابٌ؟
"Is there any reward for goodness except goodness?"	هَلْ جَزَآءُ الْإِحْسَانِ إِلَّا الْإِحْسَانُ
"Is there any doubt about Allāh, Creator of the heavens and the earth?"	أَفِي اللهِ شَكٌّ فَاطِرِ السَّمٰوٰتِ وَالْأَرْضِ

All these interrogative pronouns are مَبْنِيّ (indeclinable), except for أَيُّ and أَيَّةُ which are مُعْرَب (declinable). This means أَيُّ and أَيَّةُ change their endings based on their grammatical function in the sentence. For example:

مَرْفُوْع	مَنْصُوْب	مَجْرُوْر
أَيُّ كِتَابٍ هٰذَا؟	سَأَلْتُ أَيَّ طَالِبٍ رَأَيْتُهُ	مِنْ أَيِّ شَيْءٍ خَلَقَهُ؟
Which book is this?	I asked whichever student I saw	From what thing did He create him?

Lesson 26

Diptotes - أَسْمَاءُ غَيْرِ مُنْصَرِفَةٍ

In Arabic, there are certain types of nouns that do not take *tanwīn* (nunation) in any grammatical case. These nouns are known as diptotes and are referred to in Arabic as أَسْمَاءُ غَيْرِ مُنْصَرِفَةٍ.

Rules of Diptotes (أَسْمَاءُ غَيْرِ مُنْصَرِفَةٍ)

1) A غَيْرُ مُنْصَرِفٍ (diptote) noun does not take *kasrah* or *tanwīn*. Instead of *kasrah*, it takes a *fatḥah* when it is مَجْرُوْر. For example:

The pen belongs to Fāṭimah	اَلْقَلَمُ لِفَاطِمَةَ

2) If the غَيْر مُنْصَرِف noun is preceded by ال (i.e. becomes definite) or is made مُضَاف, then in the مَجْرُوْر case, it may take a *kasrah*. However, *tanwīn* is still not allowed because a noun made definite by the article ال and مُضَاف nouns never take *tanwīn*. For example:

"In the best form"	فِيْٓ أَحْسَنِ تَقْوِيْمٍ
In the mosques	فِي الْمَسَاجِدِ

3) For five causes of being غَيْر مُنْصَرِف, being a proper noun is a condition. These causes are only valid when they are part of a name. The five causes are:

1. Feminine by *tā' marbūṭah*	فَاطِمَةُ
2. Feminine by meaning	زَيْنَبُ
3. Foreign origin	إِبْرَاهِيْمُ
4. Compound names	مَعْدِيْكَرِبُ، بَعْلَبَكُّ
5. Two extra letters – ان at the end	عِمْرَانُ، نُعْمَانُ

4) There are two causes of being غَيْر مُنْصَرِف that do not require being a proper noun, but can be combined with it:

1- ʿAdl (عَدْلٌ)– a noun derived from another form. For example:

عُمَرُ	زُفَرُ

2- Verb pattern (وَزْنُ الْفِعْلِ) – a noun with the pattern of a verb. For example:

أَحْمَدُ	أَبْيَضُ

5) If any of the five causes that require being a proper noun are made indefinite (نَكِرَة), the noun becomes fully declinable (مُنْصَرِف). For example:

رُبَّ عِمْرَانٍ	رُبَّ فَاطِمَةٍ
Many ʿImrāns	Many Fāṭimahs

6) If the two causes that do not require being a proper noun (عَدل and وَزْنُ الْفِعْلِ) are used in indefinite (نَكِرَة) form, the noun also becomes مُنْصَرِف. For example:

رُبَّ عُمَرٍ	رُبَّ أَحْمَدٍ
Many ʿUmars	Many Aḥmads

7) The following two features are strong enough on their own to make a noun غَيْر مُنْصَرِف, because each of them counts as if the noun has two causes:

1. Feminine ending with *alif*. For example:

حُبْلٰى	حَمْرَاءُ

2. Nouns made plural using a مُنْتَهَى الْجُمُوْع pattern:

There are three مُنْتَهَى الْجُمُوْعِ patterns in the language. These are patterns that signify plurals that have been made plural to the highest degree.

Below is a hierarchy of these groups with examples. While there are additional patterns, they have been excluded for now due to their limited usage.

Pattern	Example	Translation
مَفَاعِلُ	مَسَاجِدُ	Mosques
مَفَاعِيْلُ	مَصَابِيْحُ	Lamps
فَوَاعِلُ	فَوَاكِهُ	Fruits
فَعَائِلُ	رَسَائِلُ	Letters
فَعَالِيْلُ	قَرَاطِيْسُ	Scrolls
أَفَاعِيْلُ	أَكَاذِيْبُ	Lies
فَيَاعِيْلُ	شَيَاطِيْنُ	Devils
فَعَالِيْنُ	سَلَاطِيْنُ	Rulers/Kings

On the next page are a few examples containing غَيْر مُنْصَرِف nouns, where all the rules you have learned so far are applied.

This is a trip to Makkah	هٰذِهِ رِحْلَةٌ إِلٰى مَكَّةَ
This is Aḥmad’s house	هٰذَا بَيْتُ أَحْمَدَ
Ibrahim is a noble prophet	إِبْرَاهِيْمُ نَبِيٌّ كَرِيْمٌ
This is Imran’s book	هٰذَا كِتَابُ عِمْرَانَ
The doors of the village mosques are open	أَبْوَابُ مَسَاجِدِ الْقَرْيَةِ مَفْتُوْحَةٌ
That is a red car	تِلْكَ سَيَّارَةٌ حَمْرَاءُ
This is a black cat	هٰذِهِ قِطَّةٌ سَوْدَاءُ
‘Umar’s key is on the desk	مِفْتَاحُ عُمَرَ عَلَى الْمَكْتَبِ
This is Yūsuf’s house	هٰذَا بَيْتُ يُوْسُفَ
The Mosques of Damascus are beautiful	مَسَاجِدُ دِمَشْقَ جَمِيْلَةٌ
The shop of Sulaymān is open	دُكَّانُ سُلَيْمَانَ مَفْتُوْحٌ
These are delicious fruits	هٰذِهِ فَوَاكِهُ لَذِيْذَةٌ
These are powerful Sultans	هٰؤُلَآءِ سَلَاطِيْنُ قَوِيُّوْنَ
Those are beautiful lamps	تِلْكَ مَصَابِيْحُ جَمِيْلَةٌ
These are white papers	هٰذِهِ قَرَاطِيْسُ بَيْضَاءُ
The friends of Fāṭimah are righteous	صَدِيْقَاتُ فَاطِمَةَ صَالِحَاتٌ

Lesson 27

The Verbal Noun - اَلْمَصْدَرُ

The مَصْدَر (verbal noun) serves as the root word from which verbs and their related nouns - such as adjectives - are derived. Since it is the foundational form of the verb, it naturally includes all the root letters of the verb and may include additional letters, typically not exceeding five letters in total.

The مَصْدَر conveys the essential meaning of the verb - the abstract concept of the action - without indicating any tense or specifying who performs the action. For example:

اَلْفِعْلُ	اَلْمَصْدَرُ
He wrote - كَتَبَ	Writing - كِتَابَةٌ
He went - ذَهَبَ	Going - ذَهَابٌ

From the مَصْدَر, several key grammatical forms are derived, which will be covered later, and these include:

اِسْمُ الْفَاعِلِ — The Active Participle	
كَاتِبٌ	writer
اِسْمُ الْمَفْعُوْلِ — the passive participle	
مَكْتُوْبٌ	written
اَلصِّفَةُ الْمُشَبَّهَةُ — forms that describe a permanent or inherent quality	
كَرِيْمٌ	generous, noble
صِيْغَةُ الْمُبَالَغَةِ — forms that emphasise or exaggerate the meaning	
غَفَّارٌ	very forgiving

أَفْعَلُ التَّفْضِيْلِ — the comparative and superlative adjective	
أَكْبَر	bigger
اِسْمُ الْمَكَانِ — the noun of place	
مَكْتَبٌ	office
اِسْمُ الزَّمَانِ — the noun that denotes the time of the action	
صَبَاحٌ	Morning
اِسْمُ الْآلَةِ — the noun that denotes the instrument or tool used for an action	
مِفْتَاحٌ	key

The verbal nouns of triliteral verbs follow different patterns including:

Verbal Noun (مَصْدَر)	Pattern (وَزْن)
نَصْرٌ	فَعْلٌ
شُغْلٌ	فُعْلٌ
عِلْمٌ	فِعْلٌ
طَلَبٌ	فَعَلٌ
قُدْرَةٌ	فُعْلَةٌ
رَحْمَةٌ	فَعْلَةٌ
سَرِقَةٌ	فَعِلَةٌ
ذَهَابٌ	فَعَالٌ
دُخُوْلٌ	فُعُوْلٌ
صُعُوْبَةٌ	فُعُوْلَةٌ

The verbal nouns (مَصَادِر) of triliteral verbs typically depend on common usage rather than strict rules. However, some patterns (أَوْزَان) are derived based on logical reasoning (قِيَاس). Here are a few examples:

فِعَالَةٌ: This pattern is used for verbs that express professions or crafts, such as:

حِيَاكَةٌ (weaving)	زِرَاعَةٌ (agriculture)
صِبَاغَةٌ (dyeing)	خِيَاطَةٌ (sewing)

Sometimes, فِعَالَةٌ also describes positions or roles, like:

خِلَافَةٌ (leadership)	إِمَامَةٌ (*Imāmah*)	وِزَارَةٌ (ministry)

فَعَلَانٌ: This pattern often indicates actions involving motion or disturbance, such as:

جَرَيَانٌ (flow)	خَفَقَانٌ (palpitation)
فَيَضَانٌ (flood)	غَلَيَانٌ (boiling)

فُعْلَةٌ: This pattern is frequently used to denote colours, including:

صُفْرَةٌ (yellowness)	زُرْقَةٌ (blueness)	حُمْرَةٌ (redness)

فُعَالٌ: This pattern is linked to expressions of illness, like:

دُوَارٌ (dizziness)	صُدَاعٌ (headache)	سُعَالٌ (cough)

فُعَالَةٌ and فُعُوْلَةٌ: These patterns can indicate sounds, such as:

بُكَاءٌ (crying)	خُوَارٌ (mooing)	نُبَاقٌ (cawing)

Lesson 28

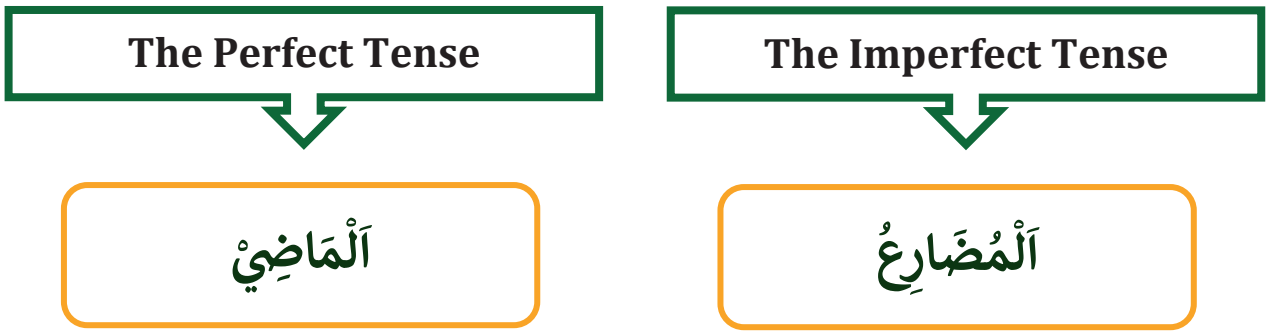
The Verb – اَلْفِعْلُ

In Arabic, a verb is called فِعْلٌ. A verb is a word that describes an action - something that happens, is happening, or will happen.

Verbs are essential parts of sentences because they tell us what someone or something is doing. For example, actions like to write, to read, or to sleep are all verbs. In Arabic grammar, we will learn how verbs change based on the time of the action (past, present, or future) and how they match the subject in number and gender.

The Arabic Tenses

In English, verbs are categorised into three tenses: past, present, and future. The past tense refers to an action that has already been completed. The present tense refers to an action that is currently taking place. The future tense refers to an action that will happen later. In Arabic, there are only two main tenses:



The past tense (perfect tense) – اَلْمَاضِيْ: This refers to actions that have already happened. The present/future tense (imperfect tense) – الْمُضَارِعُ: This single form is used to express both actions that are happening now and actions that will happen in the future. The context usually clarifies the intended meaning.

Just as you have previously learned the 14 attached and detached pronouns, there are 14 different verb forms in both the past and

present/future tenses, depending on who is doing the action. These conjugations reflect gender (male/female), number (singular, dual, plural), and person (first, second, third).

The Root System

In Arabic, most verbs are derived from root letters - usually three, though some have four or five. These root letters carry the core meaning of the verb. For example, the word كَتَبَ is triliteral and is made up by the letters ك ,ت and ب and carries the meaning of 'writing'.

Numerous words stemming from this root revolve around the concept of 'writing', either in a literal or abstract sense.

By adding specific letters before, within, or after the word كَتَبَ, it can be altered into various forms, each carrying a unique but related meaning. Below are different forms derived from the root word كَتَبَ, each showing how the meaning changes when specific letters are added.

كَتَبَ	He wrote
يَكْتُبُ	He is writing
اُكْتُبْ	Write (command)
لَا تَكْتُبْ	Don't write (negative command)
كَاتِبٌ	Writer
مَكْتُوْبٌ	Written
مَكْتَبٌ	Library

From the examples above, it's evident that the meaning of "كَتَبَ" changes when specific letters are added. The resultant word can be a

noun or a verb, depending on the letter or letters added and its position in the word.

When referring to simple trilateral verbs, Arabic grammar focuses on مَاضِي، وَاحِد، مُذَكَّر، غَائِب (past tense, singular, masculine, third person form). This form is considered the base verb, like فَعَلَ, which means "he did."

This base form is commonly used in dictionaries and grammar books because it clearly displays the verb's root letters and serves as the foundation for learning how verbs conjugate. All verb patterns are built from this model.

Below are a few examples of simple three-lettered verbs in their base form (third person singular masculine).

Verb	Meaning	Root Letters
كَتَبَ	He wrote	ك – ت – ب
ذَهَبَ	He went	ذ – ه – ب
جَلَسَ	He sat	ج – ل – س
نَصَرَ	He helped	ن – ص – ر
خَرَجَ	He exited	خ – ر – ج
دَخَلَ	He entered	د – خ – ل
سَجَدَ	He prostrated	س – ج - د

To form the 14 different conjugated forms from the base verb, changes are made to the ending and sometimes to the middle of the verb by adding certain letters or adjusting vowels.

The table below illustrates the conjugation of the past tense of the verb فَعَلَ according to each of the 14 subject pronouns.

Gender	Verb	English Meaning	Number	Pronoun
Masculine	فَعَلَ	He did	Singular	هُوَ
	فَعَلَا	They (2) did	Dual	هُمَا
	فَعَلُوْا	They did	Plural	هُمْ
Feminine	فَعَلَتْ	She did	Singular	هِيَ
	فَعَلَتَا	They (2) did	Dual	هُمَا
	فَعَلْنَ	They did	Plural	هُنَّ
Masculine	فَعَلْتَ	You did	Singular	أَنْتَ
	فَعَلْتُمَا	You (2) did	Dual	أَنْتُمَا
	فَعَلْتُمْ	You did	Plural	أَنْتُمْ
Feminine	فَعَلْتِ	You did	Singular	أَنْتِ
	فَعَلْتُمَا	You (2) did	Dual	أَنْتُمَا
	فَعَلْتُنَّ	You did	Plural	أَنْتُنَّ
Masculine & Feminine	فَعَلْتُ	I did	Singular	أَنَا
	فَعَلْنَا	We did	Plural	نَحْنُ

Lesson 29

The Science of Morphology - عِلْمُ الصَّرْفِ

Morphology refers to the study of words and how they are formed. عِلْمُ الصَّرْفِ primarily focuses on verbs and how they change in form due to factors such as tense, gender, number (singular, dual, plural), and voice (active or passive). It deals with the internal structure of words and the patterns that verbs follow as they conjugate.

a) When describing any pattern in a trilateral verb in Arabic, it is compared with the verb فَعَلَ hence it is considered as the standard verb and is broken down in the following way:

لَ	عَ	فَ
ل Letter	ع Letter	ف Letter
Third Letter	Second Letter	First Letter

نَصَرَ		
رَ	صَ	نَ
ل Letter	ع Letter	ف Letter
Third Letter	Second Letter	First Letter

كَتَبَ		
بَ	تَ	كَ
ل Letter	ع Letter	ف Letter
Third Letter	Second Letter	First Letter

b) In a simple trilateral verb, the first and third root letters carry a *fatḥah*, while the second root letter (ع letter) may carry a *fatḥah*, *kasrah*, or *ḍammah*.

فَعُلَ	فَعِلَ	فَعَلَ
كَرُمَ	سَمِعَ	كَتَبَ
حَسُنَ	فَرِحَ	نَصَرَ
عَظُمَ	عَلِمَ	ضَرَبَ

Below you will find three separate tables, each containing a verb with a different *ḥarakah* on the ع letter - *fatḥah*, *kasrah*, and *ḍammah*. You will notice that although the middle letter carries a different vowel in each case, the conjugation pattern remains the same; the only difference lies in how the verbs are pronounced.

Conjugation for Past Tense Verbs with *fatḥah* on the ع Letter

Person	Gender	Plural	Dual	Singular
Third	Masculine	نَصَرُوْا	نَصَرَا	نَصَرَ
Third	Feminine	نَصَرْنَ	نَصَرَتَا	نَصَرَتْ
Second	Masculine	نَصَرْتُمْ	نَصَرْتُمَا	نَصَرْتَ
Second	Feminine	نَصَرْتُنَّ	نَصَرْتُمَا	نَصَرْتِ
First	Masculine & Feminine	نَصَرْنَا		نَصَرْتُ

Conjugation for Past Tense Verbs with *kasrah* on the ع Letter

Person	Gender	Plural	Dual	Singular
Third	Masculine	سَمِعُوْا	سَمِعَا	سَمِعَ
Third	Feminine	سَمِعْنَ	سَمِعَتَا	سَمِعَتْ
Second	Masculine	سَمِعْتُمْ	سَمِعْتُمَا	سَمِعْتَ
Second	Feminine	سَمِعْتُنَّ	سَمِعْتُمَا	سَمِعْتِ
First	Masculine & Feminine	سَمِعْنَا		سَمِعْتُ

Conjugation for Past Tense Verbs with *ḍammah* on the ع Letter

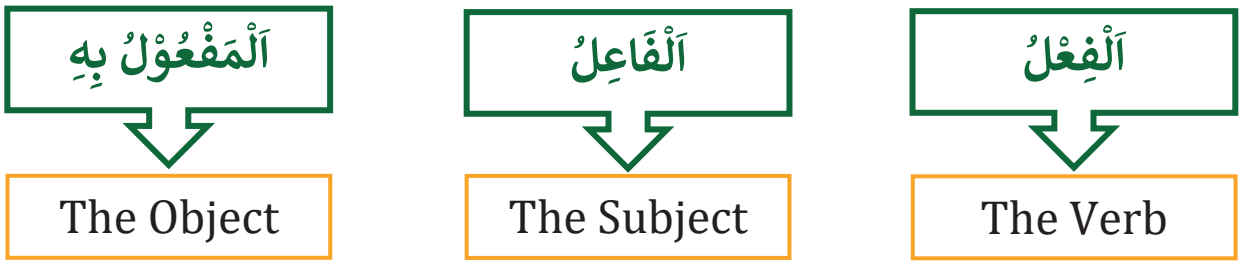
Person	Gender	Plural	Dual	Singular
Third	Masculine	كَرُمُوْا	كَرُمَا	كَرُمَ
Third	Feminine	كَرُمْنَ	كَرُمَتَا	كَرُمَتْ
Second	Masculine	كَرُمْتُمْ	كَرُمْتُمَا	كَرُمْتَ
Second	Feminine	كَرُمْتُنَّ	كَرُمْتُمَا	كَرُمْتِ
First	Masculine & Feminine	كَرُمْنَا		كَرُمْتُ

Lesson 30

The Verbal Sentence - اَلْجُمْلَةُ الْفِعْلِيَّةُ

You previously learnt that Arabic sentences are of two types: nominal and verbal. A nominal sentence (جُمْلَة اِسْمِيَّة) begins with a noun and is made up of a مُبْتَدَأ (subject) and a خَبَر (predicate).

A verbal sentence (جُمْلَة فِعْلِيَّة), on the other hand, begins with a verb. It usually has three main parts:



1. اَلْفِعْلُ (The Verb)

The verb comes at the start of a verbal sentence. It can be a past tense verb, which you have already learnt, or it can be in the present/future tense. It can also be a command, which you will learn later.

2. اَلْفَاعِلُ (The Subject)

The فَاعِل is the one who performs the action in a verbal sentence. In English, this is called the subject. The verb must match the subject in gender and the فَاعِل is always مَرْفُوْع. For example:

جَلَسَ الْوَلَدُ – The boy sat

Subject	Verb
الْوَلَدُ	جَلَسَ
The boy	Sat

In Arabic, the normal word order in a verbal sentence is:

Verb → Subject → (Object if any)

A key rule to remember:

When the verb comes before the subject, it remains singular - even if the subject is dual or plural. The verb still matches the subject in gender (masculine or feminine). For example:

The two boys sat	جَلَسَ الْوَلَدَانِ
The two girls sat	جَلَسَتِ* الْبِنْتَانِ

In both examples above, the subject is dual, but the verb remains singular because it comes first. However, the verb still matches the subject in gender.

* If the subject is feminine and begins with the definite article ال, the final letter of the verb (ت) takes a *kasrah* instead of a *sukūn* to avoid two consecutive *sukūns* and make pronunciation smoother.

If the subject were to come before the verb, then the verb would have to match the subject in both gender and number. For example:

The two boys sat	اَلْوَلَدَانِ جَلَسَا
The boys (plural) sat	اَلْأَوْلَادُ جَلَسُوْا
The two girls sat	اَلْبِنْتَانِ جَلَسَتَا
The girls (plural) sat	اَلْبَنَاتُ جَلَسْنَ

The meaning in English remains the same whether the sentence starts with the verb or the subject.

3. اَلْمَفْعُوْلُ بِهِ (The Object)

The مَفْعُوْل بِهِ is the receiver of the action. It tells us what or whom the action was done to. It always appears in the مَنْصُوْب case. For example:

كَتَبَ زَيْدٌ رِسَالَةً – Zayd wrote a letter

Object	Subject	Verb
رِسَالَةً	زَيْدٌ	كَتَبَ
A letter	Zayd	Wrote

Below are some more examples of verbal sentences to help you observe how the subject is always in the مَرْفُوْع case and the object is always in the مَنْصُوْب case.

The boy slept	نَامَ الْوَلَدُ
The teacher wrote the lesson	كَتَبَ الْأُسْتَاذُ الدَّرْسَ
The student went out	خَرَجَ الطَّالِبُ
The girl read the book	قَرَأَتِ الْبِنْتُ الْكِتَابَ
The girl ate the apple	أَكَلَتِ الْبِنْتُ التُّفَّاحَةَ
The two students (f) studied the lesson	دَرَسَتِ الطَّالِبَتَانِ الدَّرْسَ
The men opened the door	فَتَحَ الرِّجَالُ الْبَابَ
The girls read the story	قَرَأَتِ الْبَنَاتُ الْقِصَّةَ
Zayd drank water	شَرِبَ زَيْدٌ مَاءً
The students (f) understood the lesson	فَهِمَتِ الطَّالِبَاتُ الدَّرْسَ
The boys read the Qur’ān	قَرَأَ الْأَوْلَادُ الْقُرْاٰنَ

Pronouns as Subjects

When a pronoun occurs as a subject, usually there is no need to write it independently. All the pronouns are generally implicit in the conjugation of a verb. For example:

I found the key	وَجَدْتُ الْمِفْتَاحَ

In this example, the pronoun أَنَا (I) is implicit within the verb وَجَدْتُ, so there is no need to write the pronoun separately. Below are a few more examples:

He opened the door	فَتَحَ الْبَابَ
They (f) read the book	قَرَأْنَ الْكِتَابَ
She wrote the letter	كَتَبَتِ الرِّسَالَةَ

In some instances where emphasis is needed, the pronoun may be added before the verb. For example:

He opened the door	هُوَ فَتَحَ الْبَابَ

The use of هُوَ emphasises that 'He', and not someone else, opened the door.

Pronouns as Objects

When a pronoun occurs as an object in a verbal sentence, two rules will apply:

1) If the subject is a ضَمِيْر مُتَّصِل (attached pronoun), then the object pronoun comes in the usual order (i.e. after the conjugated verb). For example:

We found them	وَجَدْنَاهُمْ

In the previous example, the verb وَجَدْنَاهُمْ consists of three components: a verb, a subject, and an object. The verb is وَجَدَ (he found), the attached نَا is the subject (we), and the attached هُمْ at the end is the object, which is an attached pronoun referring to the third-person masculine plural (them). Below are a few more examples:

He hit me	ضَرَبَنِيْ
You took it	أَخَذْتَهُ
I saw you	رَأَيْتُكَ
We heard you (all)	سَمِعْنَاكُمْ

2) If the subject is explicit, i.e. not an attached pronoun or a ضَمِيْر مُنْفَصِل (detached pronoun), then the object pronoun comes before the subject (as opposed to the usual order where the object comes after the subject), and is written jointly with the verb. For example:

The teacher wrote it	كَتَبَهُ الْأُسْتَاذُ

In the example above, the word كَتَبَ is the verb, الْأُسْتَاذُ is the subject, which is why it is in the مَرْفُوْع case , and the attached pronoun هُ with كَتَبَ is the object, which is in the مَنْصُوْب case. This is because the subject is not an attached pronoun but is written explicitly as الْأُسْتَاذُ in the sentence. Below are a few more examples:

The student understood it	فَهِمَهَا الطَّالِبُ
Fāṭimah drank it	شَرِبَتْهَا فَاطِمَةُ
The father advised them	نَصَحَهُمُ الْأَبُ
The boy broke it	كَسَرَهُ الْوَلَدُ

Lesson 31

مَا of Negation - مَا النَّافِيَةُ

مَا is a particle that has multiple usages in Arabic. You have already covered two types of مَا previously:

1) مَا اسْتِفْهَامِيَّة – the مَا used for asking questions. For example:

What is this?	مَا هٰذَا؟

2) مَا مَوْصُوْلَة – the relative pronoun. For example:

What is in the book is beneficial	مَا فِي الْكِتَابِ مُفِيْدٌ

In this lesson, you will learn another type of مَا. مَا is a particle also used to negate past tense verbs in Arabic. It means "not" or "did not". For example:

Normal Sentence (Affirmative)	Negated Sentence (with مَا)
لَعِبَ زَيْدٌ	مَا لَعِبَ زَيْدٌ
Zayd played	Zayd did not play

The verb remains in the past tense form (فِعْل مَاضِي) after مَا. There is no change to the verb itself - you simply add مَا before it, and the rest of the sentence remains the same.

The only difference is that مَا negates the action. The subject and the object (if there is one) stay exactly as they are, because مَا does not have any grammatical impact on the structure of the verbal sentence.

For negation, مَا is used only before perfect tense verbs and not with the imperfect tense. To negate imperfect verbs, other particles are used, which will be introduced in the upcoming lessons. Below are examples of verbs in all 14 conjugated forms, each used in a sentence

to illustrate how مَا changes the meaning by negating the action, without affecting the verb's form.

مَا كَتَبَ أَحْمَدُ الدَّرْسَ	Aḥmad did not write the lesson
مَا لَعِبَا فِي الْمَلْعَبِ	They (d.m.) did not play in the park
مَا ذَهَبُوْا إِلَى الْمَدْرَسَةِ	They (p.m.) did not go to school
مَا قَرَأَتْ فَاطِمَةُ الْكِتَابَ	Fāṭimah did not read the book
مَا نَجَحَتَا فِي الْاِمْتِحَانِ	They (d.f.) did not pass the exam
مَا خَرَجْنَ مِنَ الْفَصْلِ	They (p.f.) did not leave the room
مَا شَرِبْتَ الْمَاءَ	You (s.m.) did not drink the water
مَا رَسَمْتُمَا الصُّوْرَةَ	You (d.m.) did not paint the picture
مَا دَخَلْتُمُ الْمَسْجِدَ	You (p.m.) did not enter the masjid
مَا كَتَبْتِ الرِّسَالَةَ	You (s.f.) did not write the letter
مَا أَكَلْتُمَا الْفاكِهَةَ	You (d.f.) did not eat the fruit
مَا ذَهَبْتُنَّ إِلَى السُّوْقِ	You (p.f.) did not go to the market
مَا نَصَرْتُ أَخِيْ	I did not help my brother
مَا وَجَدْنَا الْمَكْتَبَ	We did not find the library

As seen in all the examples above, the inclusion of the particle مَا does not bring about any grammatical change to the sentence. It simply serves to negate the verbal sentence without altering its structure.

Lesson 32

The Intransitive and Transitive Verb - اَلْفِعْلُ اللَّازِمُ وَ الْمُتَعَدِّيُ

Arabic verbs are divided into two types based on their need for an object.

The Intransitive Verb (اَلْفِعْلُ اللَّازِمُ)

Certain verbs do not require an object or do not directly take the object in the مَنْصُوْب case. When using an intransitive verb, the subject and the verb together are enough to express a complete and clear meaning. These verbs are called أَفْعَال لَازِمَة (intransitive verbs). For example:

Zayd played	لَعِبَ زَيْدٌ
Bakr became noble	كَرُمَ بَكْرٌ
Khālid searched for his books	بَحَثَ خَالِدٌ عَنْ كُتُبِهِ

In the first two examples, the verbs لَعِبَ and كَرُمَ are لَازِم, as they do not require a مَفْعُوْل بِهِ to complete their meaning. In the third example, the verb بَحَثَ does require something to complete the meaning (i.e. what was searched), but that object comes with a preposition (عَنْ). Since the verb does not take a مَفْعُوْل بِهِ in the مَنْصُوْب case directly, it is still classified as a فِعْل لَازِم.

The Transitive Verb (اَلْفِعْلُ الْمُتَعَدِّيُ)

A transitive verb is a verb that requires a direct object in the مَنْصُوْب case to complete its meaning. The action of the verb passes from the subject to something else, and without mentioning the مَفْعُوْل بِهِ, the sentence remains incomplete or unclear. For example:

The student wrote the lesson	كَتَبَ الطَّالِبُ الدَّرْسَ
The man ate the food	أَكَلَ الرَّجُلُ الطَّعَامَ
The girl carried the bag	حَمَلَتِ الْبِنْتُ الْحَقِيْبَةَ

Each verb above is مُتَعَدِّي, because the action is not complete without a مَفْعُوْل بِهِ. In all three sentences, the verb requires a direct object to make full sense.

Most verbs in Arabic are transitive - that is, they require a مَفْعُوْل بِهِ to complete their meaning.

In most cases, a فِعْل مُتَعَدِّي requires only one مَفْعُوْل بِهِ to complete its meaning. However, some transitive verbs require two objects to make full sense. For example:

Zayd thought ʻUmar was absent	ظَنَّ زَيْدٌ عُمَرَ غَائِبًا

In this sentence, the verb ظَنَّ needs two objects: عُمَرَ (the one being thought about – first object) غَائِبًا (what is being thought about him – second object). Without the second object, the sentence is incomplete: ظَنَّ زَيْدٌ عُمَرَ (“Zayd thought ʻUmar...”) – thought what? It’s unclear.

In some cases, three objects are used, especially with verbs like أَخْبَرَ (to inform), سَأَلَ (to ask), etc. For example:

I informed Fāṭimah that Khālid was travelling	أَخْبَرْتُ فَاطِمَةَ خَالِدًا مُسَافِرًا

Here the verb أَخْبَرَ has 3 objects: فَاطِمَةَ – whom the news was told to, خَالِدًا – the one the news was about and مُسَافِرًا – what the news was.

Lesson 33

The Imperfect Verb - اَلْفِعْلُ الْمُضَارِعُ

You have previously learnt that verbs in Arabic have two main tenses: مَاضِي and مُضَارِع. The مَاضِي tense refers to actions that have already been completed, while the مُضَارِع tense refers to actions that are currently taking place or will occur in the future. So far, you have learnt how to conjugate الفِعْلُ الْمَاضِي in all 14 forms. In this lesson, you will now learn how to form and conjugate اَلفِعْلُ الْمُضَارِعُ from the مَاضِي as well as its conjugations.

How to Form the اَلفِعْلُ المُضَارِعُ from the اَلفِعْلُ المَاضِيْ

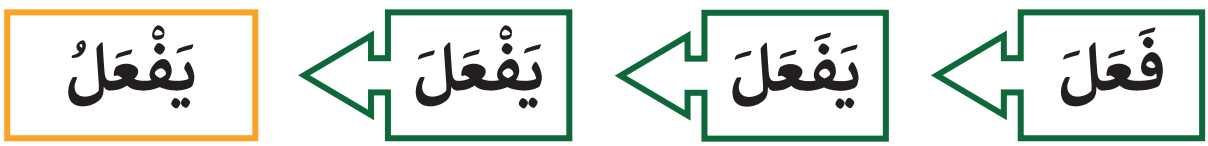
To transform a مَاضِي verb into a مُضَارِع, one of the following four letters must be added to the beginning of the verb:

أ	ت	ي	ن

These letters are known as حُرُوفُ الْمُضَارِعِ. They are always added to the start of the imperfect tense verb. We will use the letter يَ as our example, since verbs are generally introduced in the third person, singular, masculine form.

To form the اَلمُضَارِع of the verb فَعَلَ, follow these steps:

1- Add the prefix يَ to the beginning of the verb.
2- Place a سُكُون on the فَاء letter (first root letter).
3- The لَام letter (last root letter) takes a ضَمَّة.
4- The عَيْن letter (middle root letter) will carry a *fatḥah*, *kasrah*, or *ḍammah* depending on the بَاب. The details regarding the بَاب will be covered in the next lesson.



Lesson 34

The Six Verb Patterns - اَلْأَبْوَابُ السِّتَّةُ

As you have learnt previously, the perfect tense verbs follow one of three patterns:

فَعُلَ	فَعِلَ	فَعَلَ
حَسُنَ	سَمِعَ	كَتَبَ

The ع letter carries either a *faṭḥah*, *kasrah*, or *ḍammah*.

However, the imperfect tense verbs consist of six patterns that are formed from the triliteral perfect tense verbs.

The six patterns of the imperfect tense help specify what vowel to put on the middle root letter (ع letter). The table below demonstrates the patterns of the imperfect tense verbs:

Imperfect tense			Perfect tense
يَفْعُلُ	يَفْعِلُ	يَفْعَلُ	فَعَلَ
---	يَفْعِلُ	يَفْعَلُ	فَعِلَ
يَفْعُلُ	---	---	فَعُلَ

The table above indicates:

1) If the perfect tense verb is on the pattern of فَعَلَ, then either a *faṭḥah*, *kasrah*, or *ḍammah* can be put on the ع letter of the imperfect tense verb.
2) If the perfect tense verb is on the pattern of فَعِلَ, then either a *faṭḥah* or *kasrah* can be put on the ع letter of the imperfect tense verb.

3) If the past tense verb is on the pattern of فَعُلَ, then only a *ḍammah* can be put on the ع letter of the imperfect tense verb.

Each of the six possible patterns is called a باب (group) and each group is given a name.

Imperfect tense	باب Name	Pattern	Group
يَفْتَحُ	فَتَحَ	فَعَلَ – يَفْعَلُ	1
يَضْرِبُ	ضَرَبَ	فَعَلَ – يَفْعِلُ	2
يَنْصُرُ	نَصَرَ	فَعَلَ – يَفْعُلُ	3
يَسْمَعُ	سَمِعَ	فَعِلَ – يَفْعَلُ	4
يَحْسِبُ	حَسِبَ	فَعِلَ - يَفْعِلُ	5
يَكْرُمُ	كَرُمَ	فَعُلَ – يَفْعُلُ	6

Each Arabic triliteral verb belongs to one of the groups above. The reason for the above grouping is to make it easier to conjugate the imperfect from the perfect tense.

Most Arabic verbs fall into the first three groups. The fourth and sixth groups are comparatively uncommon, and the fifth is extremely rare.

The table below illustrates the conjugation of the imperfect tense of the verb يَفْعَلُ according to each of the 14 subject pronouns.

Gender	Verb	English Meaning	Number	Pronoun
Masculine	يَفْعَلُ	He will do	Singular	هُوَ
	يَفْعَلَانِ	They (2) will do	Dual	هُمَا
	يَفْعَلُوْنَ	They will do	Plural	هُمْ
Feminine	تَفْعَلُ	She will do	Singular	هِيَ
	تَفْعَلَانِ	They (2) will do	Dual	هُمَا
	يَفْعَلْنَ	They will do	Plural	هُنَّ
Masculine	تَفْعَلُ	You will do	Singular	أَنْتَ
	تَفْعَلَانِ	You (2) will do	Dual	أَنْتُمَا
	تَفْعَلُوْنَ	You will do	Plural	أَنْتُمْ
Feminine	تَفْعَلِيْنَ	You will do	Singular	أَنْتِ
	تَفْعَلَانِ	You (2) will do	Dual	أَنْتُمَا
	تَفْعَلْنَ	You will do	Plural	أَنْتُنَّ
Masculine & Feminine	أَفْعَلُ	I will do	Singular	أَنَا
	نَفْعَلُ	We will do	Plural	نَحْنُ

The table below illustrates the conjugation of the imperfect tense of بَاب فَتَحَ يَفْتَحُ according to each of the 14 subject pronouns.

Gender	Verb	English Meaning	Number	Pronoun
Masculine	يَفْتَحُ	He will open	Singular	هُوَ
	يَفْتَحَانِ	They (2) will open	Dual	هُمَا
	يَفْتَحُوْنَ	They will open	Plural	هُمْ
Feminine	تَفْتَحُ	She will open	Singular	هِيَ
	تَفْتَحَانِ	They (2) will open	Dual	هُمَا
	يَفْتَحْنَ	They will open	Plural	هُنَّ
Masculine	تَفْتَحُ	You will open	Singular	أَنْتَ
	تَفْتَحَانِ	You (2) will open	Dual	أَنْتُمَا
	تَفْتَحُوْنَ	You will open	Plural	أَنْتُمْ
Feminine	تَفْتَحِيْنَ	You will open	Singular	أَنْتِ
	تَفْتَحَانِ	You (2) will open	Dual	أَنْتُمَا
	تَفْتَحْنَ	You will open	Plural	أَنْتُنَّ
Masculine & Feminine	أَفْتَحُ	I will open	Singular	أَنَا
	نَفْتَحُ	We will open	Plural	نَحْنُ

The table below illustrates the conjugation of the imperfect tense of بَاب ضَرَبَ يَضْرِبُ according to each of the 14 subject pronouns.

Gender	Verb	English Meaning	Number	Pronoun
Masculine	يَضْرِبُ	He will hit	Singular	هُوَ
	يَضْرِبَانِ	They (2) will hit	Dual	هُمَا
	يَضْرِبُوْنَ	They will hit	Plural	هُمْ
Feminine	تَضْرِبُ	She will hit	Singular	هِيَ
	تَضْرِبَانِ	They (2) will hit	Dual	هُمَا
	يَضْرِبْنَ	They will hit	Plural	هُنَّ
Masculine	تَضْرِبُ	You will hit	Singular	أَنْتَ
	تَضْرِبَانِ	You (2) will hit	Dual	أَنْتُمَا
	تَضْرِبُوْنَ	You will hit	Plural	أَنْتُمْ
Feminine	تَضْرِبِيْنَ	You will hit	Singular	أَنْتِ
	تَضْرِبَانِ	You (2) will hit	Dual	أَنْتُمَا
	تَضْرِبْنَ	You will hit	Plural	أَنْتُنَّ
Masculine & Feminine	أَضْرِبُ	I will hit	Singular	أَنَا
	نَضْرِبُ	We will hit	Plural	نَحْنُ

The table below illustrates the conjugation of the imperfect tense of بَاب نَصَرَ يَنْصُرُ according to each of the 14 subject pronouns.

Gender	Verb	English Meaning	Number	Pronoun
Masculine	يَنْصُرُ	He will help	Singular	هُوَ
	يَنْصُرَانِ	They (2) will help	Dual	هُمَا
	يَنْصُرُوْنَ	They will help	Plural	هُمْ
Feminine	تَنْصُرُ	She will help	Singular	هِيَ
	تَنْصُرَانِ	They (2) will help	Dual	هُمَا
	يَنْصُرْنَ	They will help	Plural	هُنَّ
Masculine	تَنْصُرُ	You will help	Singular	أَنْتَ
	تَنْصُرَانِ	You (2) will help	Dual	أَنْتُمَا
	تَنْصُرُوْنَ	You will help	Plural	أَنْتُمْ
Feminine	تَنْصُرِيْنَ	You will help	Singular	أَنْتِ
	تَنْصُرَانِ	You (2) will help	Dual	أَنْتُمَا
	تَنْصُرْنَ	You will help	Plural	أَنْتُنَّ
Masculine & Feminine	أَنْصُرُ	I will help	Singular	أَنَا
	نَنْصُرُ	We will help	Plural	نَحْنُ

The table below illustrates the conjugation of the imperfect tense of بَاب سَمِعَ يَسْمَعُ according to each of the 14 subject pronouns.

Gender	Verb	English Meaning	Number	Pronoun
Masculine	يَسْمَعُ	He will listen	Singular	هُوَ
	يَسْمَعَانِ	They (2) will listen	Dual	هُمَا
	يَسْمَعُوْنَ	They will listen	Plural	هُمْ
Feminine	تَسْمَعُ	She will listen	Singular	هِيَ
	تَسْمَعَانِ	They (2) will listen	Dual	هُمَا
	يَسْمَعْنَ	They will listen	Plural	هُنَّ
Masculine	تَسْمَعُ	You will listen	Singular	أَنْتَ
	تَسْمَعَانِ	You (2) will listen	Dual	أَنْتُمَا
	تَسْمَعُوْنَ	You will listen	Plural	أَنْتُمْ
Feminine	تَسْمَعِيْنَ	You will listen	Singular	أَنْتِ
	تَسْمَعَانِ	You (2) will listen	Dual	أَنْتُمَا
	تَسْمَعْنَ	You will listen	Plural	أَنْتُنَّ
Masculine & Feminine	أَسْمَعُ	I will listen	Singular	أَنَا
	نَسْمَعُ	We will listen	Plural	نَحْنُ

The table below illustrates the conjugation of the imperfect tense of بَاب حَسِبَ يَحْسِبُ according to each of the 14 subject pronouns.

Gender	Verb	English Meaning	Number	Pronoun
Masculine	يَحْسِبُ	He will assume	Singular	هُوَ
	يَحْسِبَانِ	They (2) will assume	Dual	هُمَا
	يَحْسِبُوْنَ	They will assume	Plural	هُمْ
Feminine	تَحْسِبُ	She will assume	Singular	هِيَ
	تَحْسِبَانِ	They (2) will assume	Dual	هُمَا
	يَحْسِبْنَ	They will assume	Plural	هُنَّ
Masculine	تَحْسِبُ	You will assume	Singular	أَنْتَ
	تَحْسِبَانِ	You (2) will assume	Dual	أَنْتُمَا
	تَحْسِبُوْنَ	You will assume	Plural	أَنْتُمْ
Feminine	تَحْسِبِيْنَ	You will assume	Singular	أَنْتِ
	تَحْسِبَانِ	You (2) will assume	Dual	أَنْتُمَا
	تَحْسِبْنَ	You will assume	Plural	أَنْتُنَّ
Masculine & Feminine	أَحْسِبُ	I will assume	Singular	أَنَا
	نَحْسِبُ	We will assume	Plural	نَحْنُ

The table below illustrates the conjugation of the imperfect tense of بَاب كَرُمَ يَكْرُمُ according to each of the 14 subject pronouns.

Gender	Verb	English Meaning	Number	Pronoun
Masculine	يَكْرُمُ	He will be noble	Singular	هُوَ
	يَكْرُمَانِ	They (2) will be noble	Dual	هُمَا
	يَكْرُمُوْنَ	They will be noble	Plural	هُمْ
Feminine	تَكْرُمُ	She will be noble	Singular	هِيَ
	تَكْرُمَانِ	They (2) will be noble	Dual	هُمَا
	يَكْرُمْنَ	They will be noble	Plural	هُنَّ
Masculine	تَكْرُمُ	You will be noble	Singular	أَنْتَ
	تَكْرُمَانِ	You (2) will be noble	Dual	أَنْتُمَا
	تَكْرُمُوْنَ	You will be noble	Plural	أَنْتُمْ
Feminine	تَكْرُمِيْنَ	You will be noble	Singular	أَنْتِ
	تَكْرُمَانِ	You (2) will be noble	Dual	أَنْتُمَا
	تَكْرُمْنَ	You will be noble	Plural	أَنْتُنَّ
Masculine & Feminine	أَكْرُمُ	I will be noble	Singular	أَنَا
	نَكْرُمُ	We will be noble	Plural	نَحْنُ

Below are several examples of verbal sentences containing verbs in the perfect and imperfect tenses, with some having explicit subjects and others having implicit ones.

The man is opening the door	يَفْتَحُ الرَّجُلُ الْبَابَ (ف)
I ate the food	أَكَلْتُ الطَّعَامَ (ن)
We are reading the book	نَقْرَأُ الْكِتَابَ (ف)
The boy memorised the *Sūrah*	حَفِظَ الْوَلَدُ السُّوْرَةَ (س)
The principal will write the letter	يَكْتُبُ الْمُدِيْرُ الرِّسَالَةَ (ن)
The teacher is reading the article	يَقْرَأُ الْأُسْتَاذُ الْمَقَالَةَ (ف)
The boy heard the sound	سَمِعَ الطِّفْلُ الصَّوْتَ (س)
His face became beautiful	حَسُنَ وَجْهُهُ (ك)
I carried the bag	حَمَلْتُ الْحَقِيْبَةَ (ض)
The boy is wearing the shirt	يَلْبَسُ الْوَلَدُ الْقَمِيْصَ (س)
I heard him	سَمِعْتُهُ (س)
The barber cut the boy's hair	قَطَعَ الْحَلَّاقُ شَعْرَ الْوَلَدِ (ف)
The man drank the fresh juice	شَرِبَ الرَّجُلُ الْعَصِيْرَ الطَّازَجَ (س)
They ate their lunch	أَكَلُوْا غَدَاءَهُمْ (ن)
They (m) are writing the lesson	يَكْتُبُوْنَ الدَّرْسَ (ن)
Both of them are riding the horse	يَرْكَبَانِ الْحِصَانَ (س)
They (f) wrote the correct answer	كَتَبْنَ الْجَوَابَ الصَّحِيْحَ (ن)
They (f) are opening the doors	يَفْتَحْنَ الأَبْوَابَ (ف)
I washed it	غَسَلْتُهُ (ض)
The girl inherited her mother's wealth	وَرِثَتِ الْبِنْتُ مَالَ أُمِّهَا (ح)

Lesson 35

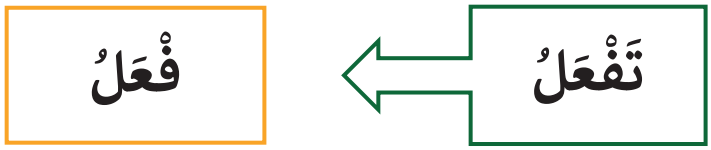
The Imperative Verb - اَلْفِعْلُ الْأَمْرُ

The imperative verb (اَلْفِعْلُ الْأَمْرُ) is used to give commands, requests, or instructions. In Arabic, a command can be given to the first, second, and third persons. In this lesson, you will learn how to give a command to the second person - whether singular, dual, or plural. The command for the first and third persons will be taught later.

The imperative verb is derived from the imperfect tense and there are specific rules for its conjugation. We will be using the second person singular masculine form to demonstrate how the imperative is constructed, since this type of command is directed to the second person.

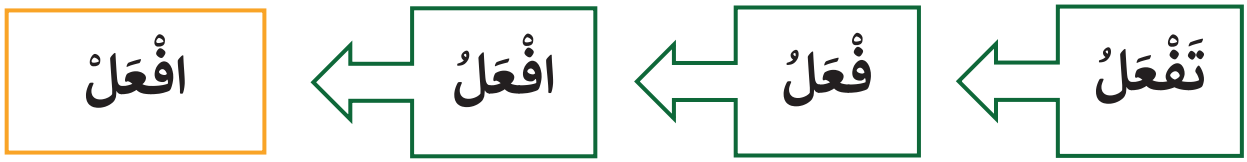
Rules of forming the imperative from an imperfect tense:

1) The first step is to remove the prefix ت of the present tense verb when forming the imperative.

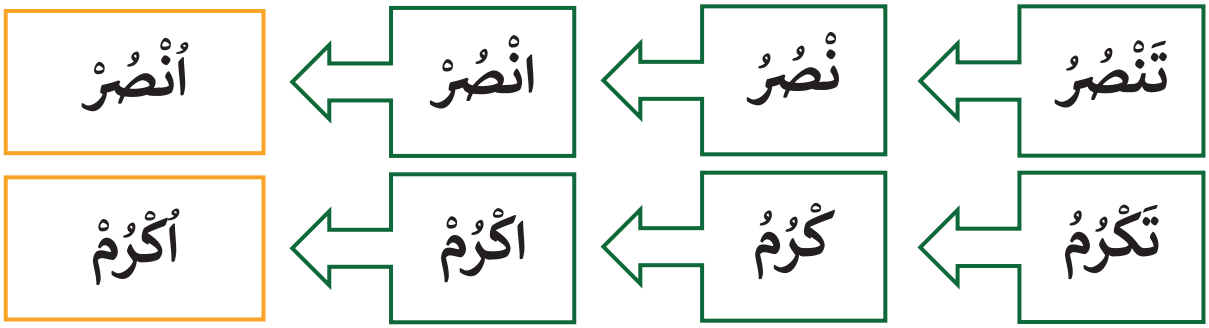


2) The second step is to add a *hamzatul wasl* (هَمْزَةُ الْوَصْلِ) at the beginning of the verb:

3) The third step is to change the vowel of the last root letter to a *sukūn*:



4) If the imperfect tense verb is from the group نَصَرَ or كَرُمَ, a *ḍammah* is added to the *hamzah*. For example:

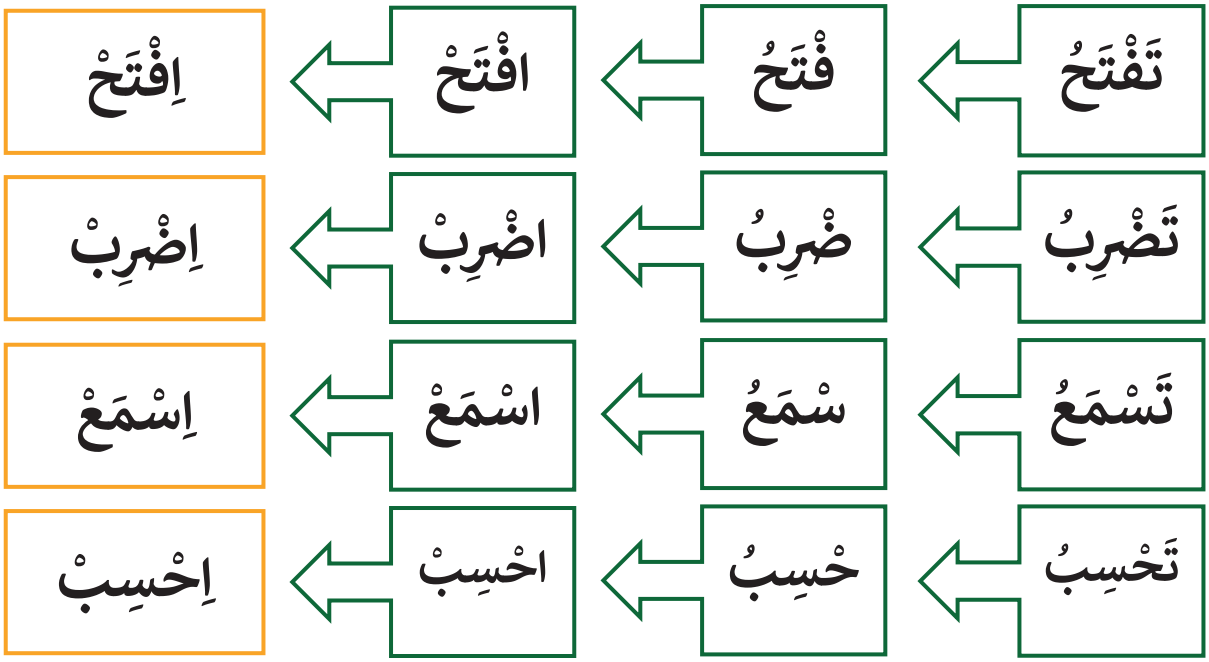


As evident from the two verbs above, the ع letter of the imperative carries the same vowel (*ḍammah*) as the ع letter of the imperfect tense verb.

5) Lastly, if the imperfect verb is from the other four groups:

فَتَحَ	ضَرَبَ	سَمِعَ	حَسِبَ

In this case, the *hamzah* will carry a *kasrah*. For example:



The five rules above pertain to the conjugation of a second person masculine imperative verb.

The conjugation table for imperative verbs differs from that of the perfect and imperfect tense verbs. As you have learnt previously, there are 14 conjugations for the perfect and imperfect tenses.

The imperative verbs feature only six conjugations because commands are directed solely at the second person. These six conjugations correspond to the various forms of the second person. It is important to note that the ن of the dual (both masculine and feminine) and the masculine plural forms is dropped, whereas the ن of the feminine plural form is retained.

The following two tables illustrate the conjugation of the six second-person imperative verbs that begin with a *ḍammah* on the هَمْزَةُ الْوَصْلِ.

Help!	Honour!	Number & Gender
اُنْصُرْ	اُكْرُمْ	Singular/Masculine
اُنْصُرَا	اُكْرُمَا	Dual/Masculine & Feminine
اُنْصُرُوْا	اُكْرُمُوْا	Plural Masculine
اُنْصُرِيْ	اُكْرُمِيْ	Singular Feminine
اُنْصُرَا	اُكْرُمَا	Dual/ Masculine & Feminine
اُنْصُرْنَ	اُكْرُمْنَ	Plural Feminine

The following four tables illustrate the conjugation of the six second-person imperative verbs that begin with a *kasrah* on the هَمْزَةُ الْوَصْلِ.

Open!	Hit!	Number & Gender
اِفْتَحْ	اِضْرِبْ	Singular/Masculine
اِفْتَحَا	اِضْرِبَا	Dual/Masculine & Feminine
اِفْتَحُوْا	اِضْرِبُوْا	Plural Masculine
اِفْتَحِيْ	اِضْرِبِيْ	Singular Feminine
اِفْتَحَا	اِضْرِبَا	Dual/ Masculine & Feminine
اِفْتَحْنَ	اِضْرِبْنَ	Plural Feminine

Listen!	Assume!	Number & Gender
اِسْمَعْ	اِحْسِبْ	Singular/Masculine
اِسْمَعَا	اِحْسِبَا	Dual/Masculine & Feminine
اِسْمَعُوْا	اِحْسِبُوْا	Plural Masculine
اِسْمَعِيْ	اِحْسِبِيْ	Singular Feminine
اِسْمَعَا	اِحْسِبَا	Dual/ Masculine & Feminine
اِسْمَعْنَ	اِحْسِبْنَ	Plural Feminine

Lesson 36

The Negative Imperative Verb - اَلْفِعْلُ النَّهْيُ

The negative imperative is used when you want to tell someone not to do something. For example: 'Don't speak!' or 'Don't eat!' It expresses prohibition and is formed differently from the positive command.

Forming a negative imperative is much simpler than forming the positive imperative. When forming the negative imperative, you begin with the imperfect tense (فِعْل مُضَارِع) of the second person (since the negative command is always addressed to someone).

1) Add لَا in front of the verb. لَا literally means 'no', but when written in the context of a negative command, it gives the meaning of 'don't'.

2) Secondly, you remove the vowel on the final letter and replace it with a *sukūn*. For example:

To form the conjugation for the remaining second person verbs, you simply add لَا followed by the imperfect tense verb and drop the final letter. However, there are two exceptions:

1) After dropping the last letter of the masculine plural, you add an *alif* (ا) at the end of the word.

2) The feminine plural verb remains unchanged.

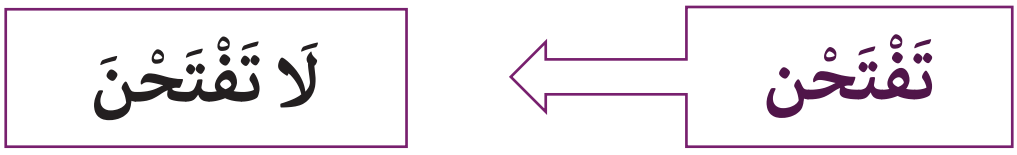
Second Person Masculine Dual – Drop the ن

Second Person Masculine Plural - Drop the ن & add an *alif*

Second Person Feminine Plural - Drop the ن

Second Person Feminine Dual - Drop the ن

Second Person Feminine Plural – Remains unchanged



The table on the next page illustrates the conjugation of the six-second person negative imperative verbs with the verbs كَتَبَ and نَصَرَ.

Don’t Write!	Number & Gender
لَا تَكْتُبْ	Singular/Masculine
لَا تَكْتُبَا	Dual/Masculine & Feminine
لَا تَكْتُبُوْا	Plural Masculine
لَا تَكْتُبِيْ	Singular Feminine
لَا تَكْتُبَا	Dual/ Masculine & Feminine
لَا تَكْتُبْنَ	Plural Feminine

Don’t Help!	Number & Gender
لَا تَنْصُرْ	Singular/Masculine
لَا تَنْصُرَا	Dual/Masculine & Feminine
لَا تَنْصُرُوْا	Plural Masculine
لَا تَنْصُرِيْ	Singular Feminine
لَا تَنْصُرَا	Dual/ Masculine & Feminine
لَا تَنْصُرْنَ	Plural Feminine

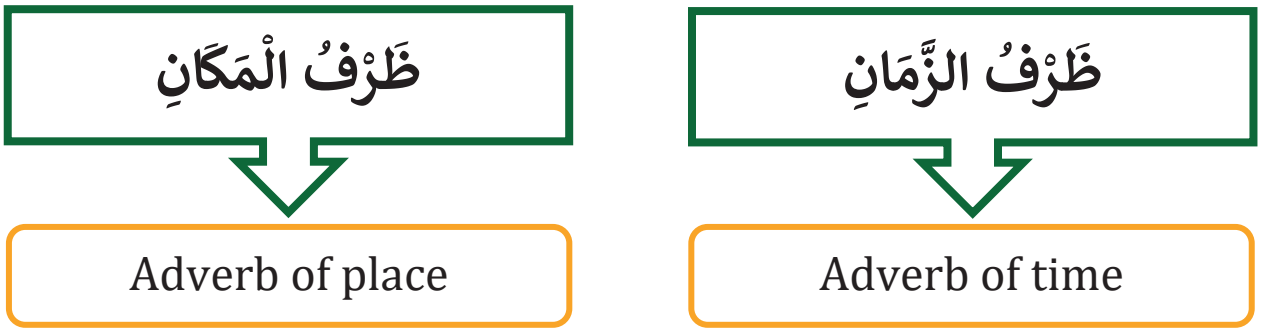
Below are a few examples of verbal sentences containing اَلْفِعْلُ الْأَمْرُ and اَلْفِعْلُ النَّهْيُ. Remember that the مَفْعُوْل بِهِ will still remain مَنْصُوْب even in these sentences.

Help the oppressed	اُنْصُرِ الْمَظْلُوْمَ
Do not hit your friend	لَا تَضْرِبْ صَدِيْقَكَ
Open the door	اِفْتَحِ الْبَابَ
Do not open the window	لَا تَفْتَحَا النَّافِذَةَ
Honour your guests	اُكْرُمُوْا ضُيُوْفَكُمْ
Do not write on the table	لَا تَكْتُبِيْ عَلَى الطَّاوِلَةِ
Memorise a *Sūrah* from the Qur'ān	اِحْفَظْنَ سُوْرَةً مِّنَ الْقُراٰنِ
Drink the milk	اِشْرَبَا الْحَلِيْبَ
Cut the bread	اِقْطَعِ الْخُبْزَ
Worship your Lord	اُعْبُدُوْا رَبَّكُمْ
Return to your classroom	اِرْجِعِيْ إِلٰى فَصْلِكِ
Raise your hand	اِرْفَعْ يَدَكَ
"Remember your Lord often"	اُذْكُرْ رَّبَّكَ كَثِيْرًا
"Do not despair of the mercy of Allāh"	لَا تَقْنَطُوْا مِنْ رَّحْمَةِ اللهِ
"Enter into Islam completely"	اُدْخُلُوْا فِي السِّلْمِ كَآفَّةً
"Do not approach the orphan's property"	لَا تَقْرَبُوْا مَالَ الْيَتِيْمِ
"Do not go near this tree"	لَا تَقْرَبَا هٰذِهِ الشَّجَرَةَ
"Look at [each of] its fruit"	اُنْظُرُوْٓا إِلٰى ثَمَرِهِ

Lesson 37

Adverb of Time and Place - ظَرْفُ الزَّمَانِ وَ الْمَكَانِ

In Arabic, an adverb (ظَرْفٌ) is a noun that tells us when or where an action takes place. These are divided into two types:



ظَرْفُ الزَّمَانِ

An adverb of time is a noun that tells when an action takes place. It usually comes in the مَنْصُوْب case. For example:

I went to school in the morning	ذَهَبْتُ إِلَى الْمَدْرَسَةِ صَبَاحًا

The word صَبَاحًا (morning) is an adverb of time showing when the action of going took place and is مَنْصُوْب.

However, the ظَرْفُ الزَّمَانِ can also appear in the مَجْرُوْر case when it is used after a preposition like فِيْ or بِ, as in:

فِي الصَّبَاحِ	بِالْمَسَاءِ
In the morning	In the evening

Sometimes, it also comes as part of an إِضَافَة construction, where the adverb is the first word and the second word is in the مَجْرُوْر case, like:

بَعْدَ الْعِيْدِ	لَيْلَةُ الْخَمِيْسِ	يَوْمُ الْجُمُعَةِ

Note: The days of the week are usually used in the إِضَافَة form.

While most adverbs of time are مُعْرَب (declinable) and change their ending based on their grammatical position, some are مَبْنِيّ (indeclinable), meaning their ending does not change regardless of their role in the sentence. This includes the adverb أَمْسِ where the final *kasrah* is static.

There are many other adverbs of time. Below is a list of the most commonly used ones along with examples.

"And (remember) when your Lord said to the angels"	وَ إِذْ قَالَ رَبُّكَ لِلْمَلٰٓئِكَةِ
"When the victory of Allāh has come and the conquest"	إِذَا جَآءَ نَصْرُ اللهِ وَالْفَتْحُ
"To Allāh belongs the command before and after"	لِلّٰهِ الْأَمْرُ مِنْ قَبْلُ وَمِنْۢ بَعْدُ
"And they will have therein their sustenance, morning and afternoon"	وَلَهُمْ رِزْقُهُمْ فِيْهَا بُكْرَةً وَّعَشِيًّا
"I invited my people night and day"	دَعَوْتُ قَوْمِيْ لَيْلًا وَّنَهَارًا
"I stayed for a day, or part of a day"	لَبِثْتُ يَوْمًا أَوْ بَعْضَ يَوْمٍ
"They said, now you have come with the truth"	قَالُوا الْـٰٔنَ جِئْتَ بِالْحَقِّ
I haven't met Zayd since/for two days	مَا لَقِيْتُ زَيْدًا مُذْ يَوْمَيْنِ
Shu'aib ran a mile	جَرٰى شُعَيْبٌ مِيْلًا
Aḥmad never lied	مَا كَذِبَ أَحْمَدُ قَطُّ

ظَرْفُ الْمَكَانِ

An adverb of place is a noun that tells where an action takes place. These come in two main types:

1. Measured or Indefinite Locations (usually units or vague directions):

These are normal nouns used as adverbs, and they usually appear as indefinite and مَنْصُوْب. For example:

وَقَفْتُ نَاحِيَةً	جَلَسْتُ مَكَانًا بَعِيْدًا
I stood to a side	I sat in a far place

2. Relational Directional Words (used in إِضَافَة)

Words like فَوْقَ (above), تَحْتَ (under), أَمَامَ (in front), خَلْفَ (behind) and بَيْنَ (between). For example:

فَوْقَ الْكِتَابِ	أَمَامَ الْبَيْتِ
Above the book	In front of the house

The following ظُرُوْف (adverbs) are مَبْنِيّ (indeclinable):

Arabic	English	Arabic	English
إِذْ	When (past)	مُنْذُ	Since / for
إِذَا	When / if	لَدٰى	At / with
أَنّٰى	How / when	لَدُنْ	From / near
مَتٰى	When	أَيْنَ	Where
مُذْ	Since	كَيْفَ	How
أَمْسِ	Yesterday	قَطُّ	Ever / never
عَوْضُ	Instead of	حَيْثُ	Where

قَبْلُ وَ بَعْدُ (Before and After)

قَبْلُ and بَعْدُ (before and after) are sometimes مُعْرَب and sometimes مَبْنِيٌّ depending on the following four situations:

1) If the مُضَاف إِلَيْهِ is omitted in wording but intended in meaning, then the word is مَبْنِيٌّ عَلَى الضَّمِّ (indeclinable with *ḍammah*). For example:

لِلّٰهِ الْأَمْرُ مِن قَبْلُ وَمِنْۢ بَعْدُ
"To Allāh belongs the command before and after"

Both قَبْلُ and بَعْدُ are مَبْنِيّ here because the مُضَاف إِلَيْهِ is understood but not mentioned.

2) If the مُضَاف إِلَيْهِ is omitted and not intended in meaning, the word is مُعْرَب, and *tanwīn* may appear. For example:

جَاءَ زَيْدٌ قَبْلًا
Zayd came before

3) If the مُضَاف إِلَيْهِ is omitted but intended clearly in meaning, then the word remains مُعْرَب, but *tanwīn* is not allowed. For example:

كُنْتُ حَرِيْصًا عَلَى الدَّرْسِ فَأَتَيْتُ مِن قَبْلِ
I was eager for the lesson, so I came beforehand

4) If the مُضَاف إِلَيْهِ is explicitly mentioned, then the word is clearly مُعْرَب and follows standard grammatical inflection. For example:

مِنْ قَبْلِهِمْ – مِنْۢ بَعْدِهِمْ

أَسْمَاءُ الْجِهَاتِ السِّتِّ – The six directional nouns

These are nouns that indicate direction or position, and they are six:

قُدَّامُ	خَلْفُ	تَحْتُ	فَوْقُ	شِمَالُ	يَمِيْنُ
In front	Behind	Below	Above	Left	Right

These six directional nouns follow the same four grammatical rules as قَبْلُ and بَعْدُ mentioned above.

Below is a list of the most commonly used adverbs of places along with examples.

مَعَ

The adverb of place مَعَ mostly appears with the meaning of 'with'.

I came with Bakr	جِئْتُ مَعَ بَكْرٍ
Shāhid is sitting with Anas	شَاهِدٌ يَجْلِسُ مَعَ أَنَسٍ
I prayed Fajr prayer with my father	صَلَّيْتُ صَلٰوةَ الْفَجْرِ مَعَ أَبِيْ

عِنْدَ

The adverb of place عِنْدَ can carry multiple meanings which include by, at, near and with. Below are a few examples.

"They will have their reward with their lord"	فَلَهُمْ أَجْرُهُمْ عِنْدَ رَبِّهِمْ
"Victory comes only by the help of Allāh"	وَمَا النَّصْرُ إِلَّا مِنْ عِنْدِ اللهِ
The book is with Nūḥ	اَلْكِتَابُ عِنْدَ نُوْحٍ
I sat near the school's principal	جَلَسْتُ عِنْدَ مُدِيْرِ الْمَدْرَسَةِ

بَيْنَ

The adverb of place بَيْنَ means ‘between’. For example:

فَاحْكُمْ بَيْنَ النَّاسِ بِالْحَقِّ	*“So judge between the people in truth”*
جَلَسْتُ بَيْنَ الْبَابِ وَ الشُّبَّاكِ	I sat between the door and the window
اَلطَّاوِلَةُ بَيْنِيْ وَ بَيْنَ أَخِيْ	The table is between me and (between) my brother
سَافَرْتُ بَيْنَ الْعَصْرِ وَ الْمَغْرِبِ	I travelled between ʿAṣr and Maghrib

حَيْثُ

The adverb of place حَيْثُ means ‘where’ or ‘wherever’. For example:

اَللّٰهُ أَعْلَمُ حَيْثُ يَجْعَلُ رِسَالَتَهُ	*“Allāh is most knowing of where He places His message”*
اِجْلِسْ حَيْثُ يَجْلِسُ خَالِدٌ	Sit where Khālid is sitting
اِقْرَأْ حَيْثُ تَقْرَأُ أُخْتُكَ	Read where your sister reads
فَكُلَا مِنْ حَيْثُ شِئْتُمَا	*“And eat from wherever you will”*

There are many other adverbs of place that are less commonly used than the ones previously mentioned. Some of these include:

اِمْشِ قُدَّامَ خَالِدٍ	Walk in front of Khālid
جَلَسَ أَخِيْ تِلْقاءَ الْأُسْتَاذِ	My brother sat opposite to the teacher
جَلَسَ زَيْدٌ يَمِيْنَ وَالِدِهِ	Zayd sat to the right of his father
جَلَسَتْ فَاطِمَةُ شِمَالَ أُمِّهَا	Fāṭimah sat to the left of her mother

Lesson 38

Types of Objects – أَنْوَاعُ الْمَفَاعِيْلِ

You learnt in lesson 30 that the مَفْعُوْل بِهِ is the receiver of the action. It tells us what or whom the action was done to. It always appears in the مَنْصُوْب case. There are five types of مَفْعُوْل بِهِ in Arabic.

1) The Direct Object - اَلْمَفْعُوْلُ بِهِ

The مَفْعُوْل بِهِ is a noun in the مَنْصُوْب case upon which the action of the subject is performed. In other words, it enters a verbal sentence, which consists of a verb and a subject, to complete the meaning.

As you learnt previously, this can be a noun or an attached pronoun. For example:

Zaid visited the sick	زَارَ زَيْدٌ الْمَرِيْضَ
Zaid visited you	زَارَكَ زَيْدٌ

Both examples above include a مَفْعُوْل بِهِ. In the first example, the word الْمَرِيْضَ is the مَفْعُوْل بِهِ and in the second example, the attached pronoun كَ appears as the مَفْعُوْل بِهِ.

2) The Absolute Object - اَلْمَفْعُوْلُ الْمُطْلَقُ

This type of مَفْعُوْل is a verbal noun in the مَنْصُوْب case, derived from the root of the verb. It carries various meanings. Below are a few examples:

To Emphasise the Action:

I hit a hitting	ضَرَبْتُ ضَرْبًا

In this example, the word ضَرْبًا emphasises the action of hitting.

To Indicate the Type of Action:

The child drank the milk — a complete drinking	شَرِبَ الطِّفْلُ اللَّبَنَ شُرْبًا

The word شُرْبًا specifies the manner or type of drinking, emphasising that it was a complete act of drinking.

To Indicate the Number of Times:

I read two lessons	قَرَأْتُ دَرْسَيْنِ

In this example, the word دَرْسَيْنِ specifies the number, indicating that it was two lessons.

To Strengthen the Meaning of the Verb:

I thanked him a great thanks	شَكَرْتُهُ شُكْرًا

In this example, شُكْرًا emphasises the act of thanking.

3) The Object of Purpose - اَلْمَفْعُوْلُ لِأَجْلِهِ

The مَفْعُوْل لِأَجْلِهِ is a verbal noun in the مَنْصُوْب case used to express the reason or cause for the action, typically related to feelings, and clarifies the purpose behind the occurrence of the verb's action. For example:

I studied out of desire for success	دَرَسْتُ رَغْبَةَ النَّجَاحِ

In this example, the word رَغْبَةَ is the مَفْعُوْل لِأَجْلِهِ, expressing the reason for studying.

The مَفْعُوْل لِأَجْلِهِ can be either indefinite or definite. For example:

I study out of love for studying	أَدْرُسُ حُبًّا بِالدِّرَاسَةِ
I study out of fear of failure	أَدْرُسُ خَوْفَ الْفَشَلِ

The مَفْعُوْل لِأَجْلِهِ can also come with a preposition indicating the reason, such as لِ (for), مِنْ (from), or فِيْ (in). For example:

I sat for learning	جَلَسْتُ لِلتَّعَلُّمِ

4) The Object of Accompaniment اَلْمَفْعُوْلُ مَعَهُ

The مَفْعُوْل مَعَهُ is a noun in the مَنْصُوْب case that appears after the letter و indicating accompaniment (i.e., the و that means "with"). This و, also known as اَلْوَاوُ الْمَعِيَّةُ must be preceded by a verb or something that carries the meaning of a verb. For example:

‘Umar rode with the dawn	رَكِبَ عُمَرُ وَالْفَجْرَ

In this sentence, الْفَجْرَ is مَفْعُوْل مَعَهُ, showing that ‘Umar’s riding happened along with the coming of dawn. Another example:

The leader went out with the army	خَرَجَ الْقَائِدُ وَالْجَيْشَ

5) The Adverbial Object - اَلْمَفْعُوْلُ فِيْهِ

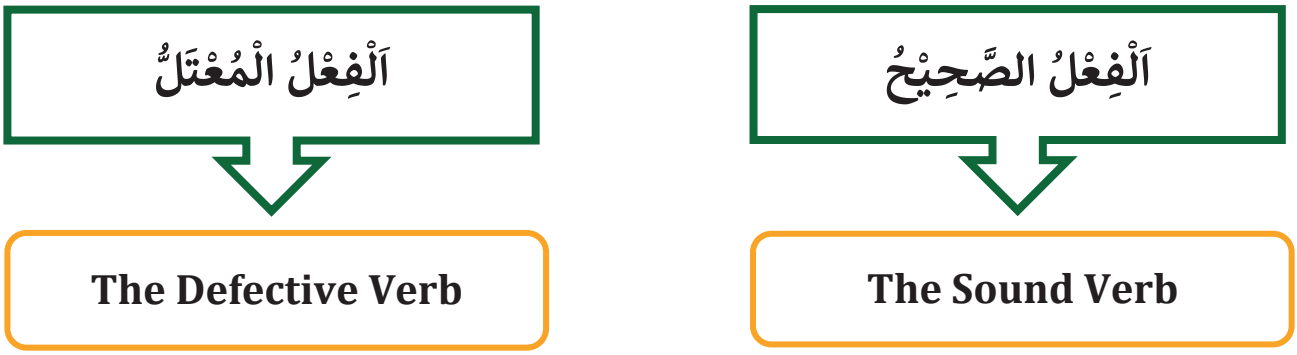
This is what we refer to as ظَرْفُ الزَّمَانِ (adverb of time) or ظَرْفُ الْمَكَانِ (adverb of place), and it is a noun in the مَنْصُوْب case. The details of both types of ظَرْف has already been covered in the previous lesson. For example:

ظَرْفُ الزَّمَانِ	ظَرْفُ الْمَكَانِ
دَرَسْتُ صَبَاحًا	جَلَسْتُ أَمَامَ الْمَكْتَبَةِ
I studied in the morning	I sat in front of the library

Lesson 39

Sound and Defective Verbs - اَلْأَفْعَالُ الصَّحِيْحَةُ وَ الْمُعْتَلَّةُ

In Arabic, verbs are categorised into different types based on the nature of their root letters. There are two main categories:



The Sound Verb - اَلْفِعْلُ الصَّحِيْحُ

Sound verbs are those whose root letters are all strong consonants (i.e., none of the root letters are weak).

These weak letters are called: اَلْحُرُوْفُ الْعِلَّةُ and they are:

ا	و	ي

The sound verbs are further divided into three categories:

a) اَلسَّالِمُ

This type of verb is free from any defects, does not contain a *hamzah* in any of its root letters, and has no doubled letters. The past tense verb conjugations covered in previous books were all sound verbs. For example:

كَتَبَ	سَمِعَ	نَصَرَ
He wrote	He heard	He helped

b) اَلْمَهْمُوْزُ

The مَهْمُوْز verbs are those that have *hamzah* (ء) as one of the root letters. The *hamzah* can appear in any of the three root positions (beginning, middle, or end).

Depending on the position of the *hamzah* within the verb, the مَهْمُوْز verbs can be classified into three categories:

I. مَهْمُوْزُ الْفَاءِ

In this type of مَهْمُوْز, the first root letter is a *hamzah*:

he took	أَخَذَ

II. مَهْمُوْزُ الْعَيْنِ

In this type of مَهْمُوْز, the second root letter is a *hamzah*:

He asked	سَأَلَ

III. مَهْمُوْزُ اللَّامِ

In this type of مَهْمُوْز, the third root letter is a *hamzah*:

He read	قَرَأَ

The conjugation of مَهْمُوْز verbs is similar to that of sound verbs in both the perfect and imperfect tenses. The only notable difference appears in the imperfect tense first-person singular form. The table on the next page illustrates this change.

Conjugation Table of مَهْمُوْز Verbs in the Imperfect & Perfect Tense

Imperfect		Perfect		
Masculine	يَأْخُذُ	أَخَذَ	Singular	Third Person
	يَأْخُذَانِ	أَخَذَا	Dual	
	يَأْخُذُوْنَ	أَخَذُوْا	Plural	
Feminine	تَأْخُذُ	أَخَذَتْ	Singular	
	تَأْخُذَانِ	أَخَذَتَا	Dual	
	يَأْخُذْنَ	أَخَذْنَ	Plural	
Masculine	تَأْخُذُ	أَخَذْتَ	Singular	Second Person
	تَأْخُذَانِ	أَخَذْتُمَا	Dual	
	تَأْخُذُوْنَ	أَخَذْتُمْ	Plural	
Feminine	تَأْخُذِيْنَ	أَخَذْتِ	Singular	
	تَأْخُذَانِ	أَخَذْتُمَا	Dual	
	تَأْخُذْنَ	أَخَذْتُنَّ	Plural	
Masculine & Feminine	اٰخُذُ	أَخَذْتُ	Singular	First Person
	نَأْخُذُ	أَخَذْنَا	Plural	

c) اَلْمُضَعَّفُ

This type of sound verb has two identical root letters appearing consecutively. It is also known as a doubled verb. For example:

فَرَّ	مَرَّ	مَدَّ
He fled	He passed by	He stretched

The conjugation of doubled verbs is slightly different from that of sound verbs in both the perfect and imperfect tenses. Additionally, their conjugation varies depending on the بَاب they belong to.

You previously learned the six patterns of the imperfect tense verbs:

فَتَحَ - يَفْتَحُ	ضَرَبَ - يَضْرِبُ
نَصَرَ - يَنْصُرُ	سَمِعَ - يَسْمَعُ
حَسِبَ - يَحْسِبُ	كَرُمَ - يَكْرُمُ

The conjugation of the مُضَعَّف verbs are mostly from the verb patterns: نَصَرَ، ضَرَبَ، سَمِعَ.

Conjugation Table of مُضَعَّف Verbs in the Imperfect & Perfect Tense from بَاب نَصَرَ يَنْصُرُ

Imperfect		Perfect		
Masculine	يَمُدُّ	مَدَّ	Singular	Third Person
	يَمُدَّانِ	مَدَّا	Dual	
	يَمُدُّوْنَ	مَدُّوْا	Plural	
Feminine	تَمُدُّ	مَدَّتْ	Singular	
	تَمُدَّانِ	مَدَّتَا	Dual	
	يَمْدُدْنَ	مَدَدْنَ	Plural	
Masculine	تَمُدُّ	مَدَدْتَّ	Singular	Second Person
	تَمُدَّانِ	مَدَدْتُّمَا	Dual	
	تَمُدُّوْنَ	مَدَدْتُّمْ	Plural	
Feminine	تَمُدِّيْنَ	مَدَدْتِّ	Singular	
	تَمُدَّانِ	مَدَدْتُّمَا	Dual	
	تَمْدُدْنَ	مَدَدْتُّنَّ	Plural	
Masculine & Feminine	أَمُدُّ	مَدَدْتُّ	Singular	First Person
	نَمُدُّ	مَدَدْنَا	Plural	

Conjugation Table of مُضَعَّف Verbs in the Imperfect & Perfect Tense from بَاب سَمِعَ يَسْمَعُ

Imperfect		Perfect		
Masculine	يَمَسُّ	مَسَّ	Singular	Third Person
	يَمَسَّانِ	مَسَّا	Dual	
	يَمَسُّوْنَ	مَسُّوْا	Plural	
Feminine	تَمَسُّ	مَسَّتْ	Singular	
	تَمَسَّانِ	مَسَّتَا	Dual	
	يَمْسَسْنَ	مَسِسْنَ	Plural	
Masculine	تَمَسُّ	مَسِسْتَ	Singular	Second Person
	تَمَسَّانِ	مَسِسْتُمَا	Dual	
	تَمَسُّوْنَ	مَسِسْتُمْ	Plural	
Feminine	تَمَسِّيْنَ	مَسِسْتِ	Singular	
	تَمَسَّانِ	مَسِسْتُمَا	Dual	
	تَمْسَسْنَ	مَسِسْتُنَّ	Plural	
Masculine & Feminine	أَمَسُّ	مَسِسْتُ	Singular	First Person
	نَمَسُّ	مَسِسْنَا	Plural	

Conjugation Table of مُضَعَّف Verbs in the Imperfect & Perfect Tense from بَاب ضَرَبَ يَضْرِبُ

Imperfect		Perfect		
Masculine	يَفِرُّ	فَرَّ	Singular	Third Person
	يَفِرَّانِ	فَرَّا	Dual	
	يَفِرُّوْنَ	فَرُّوْا	Plural	
Feminine	تَفِرُّ	فَرَّتْ	Singular	
	تَفِرَّانِ	فَرَّتَا	Dual	
	يَفْرِرْنَ	فَرَرْنَ	Plural	
Masculine	تَفِرُّ	فَرَرْتَ	Singular	Second Person
	تَفِرَّانِ	فَرَرْتُمَا	Dual	
	تَفِرُّوْنَ	فَرَرْتُمْ	Plural	
Feminine	تَفِرِّيْنَ	فَرَرْتِ	Singular	
	تَفِرَّانِ	فَرَرْتُمَا	Dual	
	تَفْرِرْنَ	فَرَرْتُنَّ	Plural	
Masculine & Feminine	أَفِرُّ	فَرَرْتُ	Singular	First Person
	نَفِرُّ	فَرَرْنَا	Plural	

The Defective Verb - اَلْفِعْلُ الْمُعْتَلُّ

The defective verbs are those that have one or more weak letters in their root. These verbs are categorised based on the position of the weak letter. There are five categories of this type of verb.

Some categories are further divided into subcategories depending on which weak letter is present within the verb.

a) اَلْمِثَالُ

مِثَال verbs are those whose first root letter is a weak letter. For example:

وَعَدَ	يَقِظَ	وَجَدَ
He promised	He woke up	He found

مِثَال verbs are further categorised into two categories:

مِثَالٌ وَاوِيٌّ	The first root letter is a و
مِثَالٌ يَائِيٌّ	The first root letter is a ي

The conjugation of the perfect tense verbs for both types of مِثَال is the same as صَحِيْح verbs. However, forming the imperfect tense of some verbs that contain certain weak letters differs from sound verbs, and the same rules cannot be applied. The conjugation of the مِثَال يَائِيّ verbs follow the same pattern as the بَاب they belong to.

Most مِثَال وَاوِيّ verbs follow the verb pattern ضَرَبَ يَضْرِبُ while some can also follow the verb patterns فَتَحَ يَفْتَحُ and سَمِعَ يَسْمَعُ.

If the مِثَال وَاوِيّ is from the verb pattern ضَرَبَ يَضْرِبُ or فَتَحَ يَفْتَحُ, then the first root letter i.e. the و is dropped when forming the imperfect tense. For example:

بَاب ضَرَبَ يَضْرِبُ	بَاب فَتَحَ يَفْتَحُ
وَجَدَ ← يَوْجِدُ ← يَجِدُ	وَهَبَ ← يَوْهَبُ ← يَهَبُ

As evident from the above, the verbs وَجَدَ and وَهَبَ were originally يَوْجِدُ and يَوْهَبُ based on their verb patterns. However, the first root letters of both verbs were dropped and they became: يَجِدُ and يَهَبُ.

If the مِثَال وَاوِيّ is from the verb pattern سَمِعَ يَسْمَعُ, no changes will take place. For example:

بَاب سَمِعَ يَسْمَعُ	←	وَجِلَ يَوْجَلُ

Conjugation Table of مِثَال وَاوِيّ Verbs on the Pattern of ضَرَبَ يَضْرِبُ

Imperfect		Perfect		
Masculine	يَجِدُ	وَجَدَ	Singular	Third Person
	يَجِدَانِ	وَجَدَا	Dual	
	يَجِدُوْنَ	وَجَدُوْا	Plural	
Feminine	تَجِدُ	وَجَدَتْ	Singular	
	تَجِدَانِ	وَجَدَتَا	Dual	
	يَجِدْنَ	وَجَدْنَ	Plural	
Masculine	تَجِدُ	وَجَدْتَّ	Singular	Second Person
	تَجِدَانِ	وَجَدْتُّمَا	Dual	
	تَجِدُوْنَ	وَجَدْتُّمْ	Plural	
Feminine	تَجِدِيْنَ	وَجَدْتِّ	Singular	
	تَجِدَانِ	وَجَدْتُّمَا	Dual	
	تَجِدْنَ	وَجَدْتُّنَّ	Plural	
Masculine & Feminine	أَجِدُ	وَجَدْتُّ	Singular	First Person
	نَجِدُ	وَجَدْنَا	Plural	

Conjugation Table of مِثَال وَاوِيّ Verbs on the Pattern of فَتَحَ يَفْتَحُ

Imperfect		Perfect		
Masculine	يَهَبُ	وَهَبَ	Singular	Third Person
	يَهَبَانِ	وَهَبَا	Dual	
	يَهَبُوْنَ	وَهَبُوْا	Plural	
Feminine	تَهَبُ	وَهَبَتْ	Singular	
	تَهَبَانِ	وَهَبَتَا	Dual	
	يَهَبْنَ	وَهَبْنَ	Plural	
Masculine	تَهَبُ	وَهَبْتَ	Singular	Second Person
	تَهَبَانِ	وَهَبْتُمَا	Dual	
	تَهَبُوْنَ	وَهَبْتُمْ	Plural	
Feminine	تَهَبِيْنَ	وَهَبْتِ	Singular	
	تَهَبَانِ	وَهَبْتُمَا	Dual	
	تَهَبْنَ	وَهَبْتُنَّ	Plural	
Masculine & Feminine	أَهَبُ	وَهَبْتُ	Singular	First Person
	نَهَبُ	وَهَبْنَا	Plural	

Conjugation Table of مِثَال وَاوِيّ Verbs on the Pattern of سَمِعَ يَسْمَعُ

Imperfect		Perfect		
Masculine	يَوْجَلُ	وَجِلَ	Singular	Third Person
	يَوْجَلَانِ	وَجِلَا	Dual	
	يَوْجَلُوْنَ	وَجِلُوْا	Plural	
Feminine	تَوْجَلُ	وَجِلَتْ	Singular	
	تَوْجَلَانِ	وَجِلَتَا	Dual	
	يَوْجَلْنَ	وَجِلْنَ	Plural	
Masculine	تَوْجَلُ	وَجِلْتَ	Singular	Second Person
	تَوْجَلَانِ	وَجِلْتُمَا	Dual	
	تَوْجَلُوْنَ	وَجِلْتُمْ	Plural	
Feminine	تَوْجَلِيْنَ	وَجِلْتِ	Singular	
	تَوْجَلَانِ	وَجِلْتُمَا	Dual	
	تَوْجَلْنَ	وَجِلْتُنَّ	Plural	
Masculine & Feminine	أَوْجَلُ	وَجِلْتُ	Singular	First Person
	نَوْجَلُ	وَجِلْنَا	Plural	

b) اَلْأَجْوَفُ

أَجْوَف verbs are those whose middle root letter (عين letter) is a weak letter. Most أَجْوَف verbs have an *alif* as the middle root letter. For example:

قَامَ	قَالَ	نَامَ
He stood	He said	He slept

Similar to مِثَال verbs, أَجْوَف verbs are further categorised into two types based on the weak letter in the verb:

The second root letter is a و	أَجْوَفٌ وَاوِيٌّ
The second root letter is a ي	أَجْوَفٌ يَائِيٌّ

An example of an أَجْوَف وَاوِيّ verb is: قَالَ. Although it appears that the second root letter is an *alif*, the verb قَالَ is considered an أَجْوَف وَاوِيّ because it was originally قَوَلَ. It changed to قَالَ due to certain Arabic morphology rules.

The same applies to أَجْوَف يَائِيّ. An example of an أَجْوَف يَائِيّ verb is: بَاعَ. Although it appears that the second root letter is an *alif*, the verb بَاعَ is considered an أَجْوَف يَائِيّ because it was originally بَيَعَ. It changed to بَاعَ due to certain Arabic morphology rules.

The أَجْوَف وَاوِيّ is generally from the verb patterns نَصَرَ يَنْصُرُ or سَمِعَ يَسْمَعُ. For example:

بَاب نَصَرَ يَنْصُرُ		بَاب سَمِعَ يَسْمَعُ	
اَلْمَاضِيْ	اَلْمُضَارِعُ	اَلْمَاضِيْ	اَلْمُضَارِعُ
قَامَ ← قَوَمَ	يَقُوْمُ ← يَقْوُمُ	خَافَ ← خَوِفَ	يَخَافُ ← يَخْوَفُ

The أَجْوَف يَائِيّ is mostly from the verb pattern ضَرَبَ يَضْرِبُ and sometimes from سَمِعَ يَسْمَعُ. For example:

بَاب ضَرَبَ يَضْرِبُ		بَاب سَمِعَ يَسْمَعُ	
اَلْمَاضِيْ	اَلْمُضَارِعُ	اَلْمَاضِيْ	اَلْمُضَارِعُ
سَيَرَ ← سَارَ	يَسْيِرُ ← يَسِيْرُ	نَيِلَ ← نَالَ	يَنْيَلُ ← يَنَالُ

The conjugation table for both أَجْوَف وَاوِيّ and أَجْوَف يَائِيّ is very different to the previous tables you have learnt.

Since the weak letter was originally something else, numerous changes occur in both the perfect and imperfect tenses.

The following pages include the conjugation tables for both types of أَجْوَف verbs.

Conjugation Table of أَجْوَف وَاوِيّ Verbs on the Pattern of نَصَرَ يَنْصُرُ

Imperfect		Perfect		
Masculine	يَقُوْمُ	قَامَ	Singular	Third Person
	يَقُوْمَانِ	قَامَا	Dual	
	يَقُوْمُوْنَ	قَامُوْا	Plural	
Feminine	تَقُوْمُ	قَامَتْ	Singular	
	تَقُوْمَانِ	قَامَتَا	Dual	
	يَقُمْنَ	قُمْنَ	Plural	
Masculine	تَقُوْمُ	قُمْتَ	Singular	Second Person
	تَقُوْمَانِ	قُمْتُمَا	Dual	
	تَقُوْمُوْنَ	قُمْتُمْ	Plural	
Feminine	تَقُوْمِيْنَ	قُمْتِ	Singular	
	تَقُوْمَانِ	قُمْتُمَا	Dual	
	تَقُمْنَ	قُمْتُنَّ	Plural	
Masculine & Feminine	أَقُوْمُ	قُمْتُ	Singular	First Person
	نَقُوْمُ	قُمْنَا	Plural	

Conjugation Table of أَجْوَف وَاوِيّ Verbs on the Pattern of سَمِعَ يَسْمَعُ

Imperfect		Perfect		
Masculine	يَخَافُ	خَافَ	Singular	Third Person
	يَخَافَانِ	خَافَا	Dual	
	يَخَافُوْنَ	خَافُوْا	Plural	
Feminine	تَخَافُ	خَافَتْ	Singular	
	تَخَافَانِ	خَافَتَا	Dual	
	يَخَفْنَ	خِفْنَ	Plural	
Masculine	تَخَافُ	خِفْتَ	Singular	Second Person
	تَخَافَانِ	خِفْتُمَا	Dual	
	تَخَافُوْنَ	خِفْتُمْ	Plural	
Feminine	تَخَافِيْنَ	خِفْتِ	Singular	
	تَخَافَانِ	خِفْتُمَا	Dual	
	تَخَفْنَ	خِفْتُنَّ	Plural	
Masculine & Feminine	أَخَافُ	خِفْتُ	Singular	First Person
	نَخَافُ	خِفْنَا	Plural	

Conjugation Table of أَجْوَف يَائِيّ Verbs on the Pattern of ضَرَبَ يَضْرِبُ

Imperfect		Perfect		
Masculine	يَسِيْرُ	سَارَ	Singular	Third Person
	يَسِيْرَانِ	سَارَا	Dual	
	يَسِيْرُوْنَ	سَارُوْا	Plural	
Feminine	تَسِيْرُ	سَارَتْ	Singular	
	تَسِيْرَانِ	سَارَتَا	Dual	
	يَسِرْنَ	سِرْنَ	Plural	
Masculine	تَسِيْرُ	سِرْتَ	Singular	Second Person
	تَسِيْرَانِ	سِرْتُمَا	Dual	
	تَسِيْرُوْنَ	سِرْتُمْ	Plural	
Feminine	تَسِيْرِيْنَ	سِرْتِ	Singular	
	تَسِيْرَانِ	سِرْتُمَا	Dual	
	تَسِرْنَ	سِرْتُنَّ	Plural	
Masculine & Feminine	أَسِيْرُ	سِرْتُ	Singular	First Person
	نَسِيْرُ	سِرْنَا	Plural	

Conjugation Table of أَجْوَف يَائِيّ Verbs on the Pattern of سَمِعَ يَسْمَعُ

Imperfect		Perfect		
Masculine	يَنَالُ	نَالَ	Singular	Third Person
	يَنَالَانِ	نَالَا	Dual	
	يَنَالُوْنَ	نَالُوْا	Plural	
Feminine	تَنَالُ	نَالَتْ	Singular	
	تَنَالَانِ	نَالَتَا	Dual	
	يَنَلْنَ	نِلْنَ	Plural	
Masculine	تَنَالُ	نِلْتَ	Singular	Second Person
	تَنَالَانِ	نِلْتُمَا	Dual	
	تَنَالُوْنَ	نِلْتُمْ	Plural	
Feminine	تَنَالِيْنَ	نِلْتِ	Singular	
	تَنَالَانِ	نِلْتُمَا	Dual	
	تَنَلْنَ	نِلْتُنَّ	Plural	
Masculine & Feminine	أَنَالُ	نِلْتُ	Singular	First Person
	نَنَالُ	نِلْنَا	Plural	

c) اَلنَّاقِصُ

نَاقِص verbs are those whose final root letter is a weak letter. For example:

سَعٰى	سَرُوَ	دَعَا
He strived	He became wealthy	He called

Similar to مِثَال and أَجْوَف verbs, نَاقِص verbs are also divided into two categories based on which weak letter appears as the final letter of the verb.

The third root letter is a و	نَاقِصٌ وَاوِيٌّ
The third root letter is a ي	نَاقِصٌ يَائِيٌّ

An example of a نَاقِص وَاوِيّ verb is: دَعَا which was originally دَعَوَ. It changed to دَعَا due to certain Arabic morphology rules.

The same applies to نَاقِص يَائِيّ. An example of a نَاقِص يَائِيّ verb is: رَضِيَ. The verb رَضِيَ was originally رَضِوَ. It changed to رَضِيَ due to certain Arabic morphology rules.

The نَاقِص وَاوِيّ is mostly from the verb pattern نَصَرَ يَنْصُرُ and sometimes from سَمِعَ يَسْمَعُ. For example:

بَاب نَصَرَ يَنْصُرُ		بَاب سَمِعَ يَسْمَعُ	
اَلْمَاضِيْ	اَلْمُضَارِعُ	اَلْمَاضِيْ	اَلْمُضَارِعُ
دَعَوَ ← دَعَا	يَدْعُوُ ← يَدْعُوْ	رَضِوَ ← رَضِيَ	يَرْضَيُ ← يَرْضٰى

The نَاقِص يَائِيّ can be from the following three verb patterns:

بَاب ضَرَبَ يَضْرِبُ	بَاب فَتَحَ يَفْتَحُ	بَاب سَمِعَ يَسْمَعُ
اَلْمَاضِيْ		
رَمَى ← رَمٰى	سَعَيَ ← سَعٰى	خَشِيَ ← خَشِيَ
اَلْمُضَارِعُ		
يَرْمِيْ ← يَرْمِيُ	يَسْعَيُ ← يَسْعٰى	يَخْشَيُ ← يَخْشٰى

Just like the conjugation table for the أَجْوَف verbs, both نَاقِص وَاوِيّ and نَاقِص يَائِيّ are also very different due to the weak letter that appears at the end of the verb.

The following pages include the conjugation tables for both types of نَاقِص verbs.

Conjugation Table of نَاقِص وَاوِيّ Verbs on the Pattern of نَصَرَ يَنْصُرُ

Imperfect		Perfect		
Masculine	يَدْعُوْ	دَعَا	Singular	Third Person
	يَدْعُوَانِ	دَعَوَا	Dual	
	يَدْعُوْنَ	دَعَوْا	Plural	
Feminine	تَدْعُوْ	دَعَتْ	Singular	
	تَدْعُوَانِ	دَعَتَا	Dual	
	يَدْعُوْنَ	دَعَوْنَ	Plural	
Masculine	تَدْعُوْ	دَعَوْتَ	Singular	Second Person
	تَدْعُوَانِ	دَعَوْتُمَا	Dual	
	تَدْعُوْنَ	دَعَوْتُمْ	Plural	
Feminine	تَدْعِيْنَ	دَعَوْتِ	Singular	
	تَدْعُوَانِ	دَعَوْتُمَا	Dual	
	تَدْعُوْنَ	دَعَوْتُنَّ	Plural	
Masculine & Feminine	أَدْعُوْ	دَعَوْتُ	Singular	First Person
	نَدْعُوْ	دَعَوْنَا	Plural	

Conjugation Table of نَاقِص وَاوِيّ Verbs on the Pattern of سَمِعَ يَسْمَعُ

Imperfect		Perfect		
Masculine	يَرْضٰى	رَضِيَ	Singular	Third Person
	يَرْضَيَانِ	رَضِيَا	Dual	
	يَرْضَوْنَ	رَضُوْا	Plural	
Feminine	تَرْضٰى	رَضِيَتْ	Singular	
	تَرْضَيَانِ	رَضِيَتَا	Dual	
	يَرْضَيْنَ	رَضِيْنَ	Plural	
Masculine	تَرْضٰى	رَضِيْتَ	Singular	Second Person
	تَرْضَيَانِ	رَضِيْتُمَا	Dual	
	تَرْضَوْنَ	رَضِيْتُمْ	Plural	
Feminine	تَرْضَيْنَ	رَضِيْتِ	Singular	
	تَرْضَيَانِ	رَضِيْتُمَا	Dual	
	تَرْضَيْنَ	رَضِيْتُنَّ	Plural	
Masculine & Feminine	أَرْضٰى	رَضِيْتُ	Singular	First Person
	نَرْضٰى	رَضِيْنَا	Plural	

Conjugation Table of نَاقِص يَائِيّ verbs on the Pattern of ضَرَبَ يَضْرِبُ

Imperfect		Perfect		
Masculine	يَرْمِيْ	رَمٰى	Singular	Third Person
	يَرْمِيَانِ	رَمَيَا	Dual	
	يَرْمُوْنَ	رَمَوْا	Plural	
Feminine	تَرْمِيْ	رَمَتْ	Singular	
	تَرْمِيَانِ	رَمَتَا	Dual	
	يَرْمِيْنَ	رَمَيْنَ	Plural	
Masculine	تَرْمِيْ	رَمَيْتَ	Singular	Second Person
	تَرْمِيَانِ	رَمَيْتُمَا	Dual	
	تَرْمُوْنَ	رَمَيْتُمْ	Plural	
Feminine	تَرْمِيْنَ	رَمَيْتِ	Singular	
	تَرْمِيَانِ	رَمَيْتُمَا	Dual	
	تَرْمِيْنَ	رَمَيْتُنَّ	Plural	
Masculine & Feminine	أَرْمِيْ	رَمَيْتُ	Singular	First Person
	نَرْمِيْ	رَمَيْنَا	Plural	

Conjugation Table of نَاقِص يَائِيّ Verbs on the Pattern of فَتَحَ يَفْتَحُ

Imperfect		Perfect		
Masculine	يَسْعٰى	سَعٰى	Singular	Third Person
	يَسْعَيَانِ	سَعَيَا	Dual	
	يَسْعَوْنَ	سَعَوْا	Plural	
Feminine	تَسْعٰى	سَعَتْ	Singular	
	تَسْعَيَانِ	سَعَتَا	Dual	
	يَسْعَيْنَ	سَعَيْنَ	Plural	
Masculine	تَسْعٰى	سَعَيْتَ	Singular	Second Person
	تَسْعَيَانِ	سَعَيْتُمَا	Dual	
	تَسْعَوْنَ	سَعَيْتُمْ	Plural	
Feminine	تَسْعَيْنَ	سَعَيْتِ	Singular	
	تَسْعَيَانِ	سَعَيْتُمَا	Dual	
	تَسْعَيْنَ	سَعَيْتُنَّ	Plural	
Masculine & Feminine	أَسْعٰى	سَعَيْتُ	Singular	First Person
	نَسْعٰى	سَعَيْنَا	Plural	

Conjugation Table of نَاقِص يَائِيّ Verbs on the Pattern of سَمِعَ يَسْمَعُ

Imperfect		Perfect		
Masculine	يَخْشٰى	خَشِيَ	Singular	Third Person
	يَخْشَيَانِ	خَشِيَا	Dual	
	يَخْشَوْنَ	خَشُوْا	Plural	
Feminine	تَخْشٰى	خَشِيَتْ	Singular	
	تَخْشَيَانِ	خَشِيَتَا	Dual	
	يَخْشَيْنَ	خَشِيْنَ	Plural	
Masculine	تَخْشٰى	خَشِيْتَ	Singular	Second Person
	تَخْشَيَانِ	خَشِيْتُمَا	Dual	
	تَخْشَوْنَ	خَشِيْتُمْ	Plural	
Feminine	تَخْشَيْنَ	خَشِيْتِ	Singular	
	تَخْشَيَانِ	خَشِيْتُمَا	Dual	
	تَخْشَيْنَ	خَشِيْتُنَّ	Plural	
Masculine & Feminine	أَخْشٰى	خَشِيْتُ	Singular	First Person
	نَخْشٰى	خَشِيْنَا	Plural	

d) اَللَّفِيْفُ الْمَقْرُوْنُ

The لَفِيْف مَقْرُوْن verbs are those whose middle and final root letters (Second and Third letters) are weak. For example:

رَوٰى	طَوٰى	نَوٰى
He narrated	He folded	He intended

The لَفِيْف مَقْرُوْن is mostly from the verb pattern ضَرَبَ يَضْرِبُ. For example:

بَاب ضَرَبَ يَضْرِبُ
اَلْمَاضِيْ
طَوَيَ ⟵ طَوٰى
اَلْمُضَارِعُ
يَطْوِيُ ⟵ يَطْوِيْ

Conjugation Table of لَفِيْف مَقْرُوْن Verbs on the Pattern of ضَرَبَ يَضْرِبُ

Imperfect		Perfect		
Masculine	يَطْوِيْ	طَوٰى	Singular	Third Person
	يَطْوِيَانِ	طَوَيَا	Dual	
	يَطْوُوْنَ	طَوَوْا	Plural	
Feminine	تَطْوِيْ	طَوَتْ	Singular	
	تَطْوِيَانِ	طَوَتَا	Dual	
	يَطْوِيْنَ	طَوَيْنَ	Plural	
Masculine	تَطْوِيْ	طَوَيْتَ	Singular	Second Person
	تَطْوِيَانِ	طَوَيْتُمَا	Dual	
	تَطْوُوْنَ	طَوَيْتُمْ	Plural	
Feminine	تَطْوِيْنَ	طَوَيْتِ	Singular	
	تَطْوِيَانِ	طَوَيْتُمَا	Dual	
	تَطْوِيْنَ	طَوَيْتُنَّ	Plural	
Masculine & Feminine	أَطْوِيْ	طَوَيْتُ	Singular	First Person
	نَطْوِيْ	طَوَيْنَا	Plural	

e) اَللَّفِيْفُ الْمَفْرُوْقُ

لَفِيْف مَفْرُوْق verbs are those whose first and final root letters are weak. For example:

وَفٰى	وَقٰى
He fulfilled	He protected

The لَفِيْف مَفْرُوْق is also mostly from the verb pattern ضَرَبَ يَضْرِبُ. For example:

بَاب ضَرَبَ يَضْرِبُ
اَلْمَاضِيْ
وَقَيَ ← وَقٰى
اَلْمُضَارِعُ
يَوْقِيُ ← يَقِيْ

Conjugation Table of لَفِيْف مَفْرُوْق Verbs on the Pattern of ضَرَبَ يَضْرِبُ

Imperfect		Perfect		
Masculine	يَقِيْ	وَقٰى	Singular	Third Person
	يَقِيَانِ	وَقَيَا	Dual	
	يَقُوْنَ	وَقَوْا	Plural	
Feminine	تَقِيْ	وَقَتْ	Singular	
	تَقِيَانِ	وَقَتَا	Dual	
	يَقِيْنَ	وَقَيْنَ	Plural	
Masculine	تَقِيْ	وَقَيْتَ	Singular	Second Person
	تَقِيَانِ	وَقَيْتُمَا	Dual	
	تَقُوْنَ	وَقَيْتُمْ	Plural	
Feminine	تَقِيْنَ	وَقَيْتِ	Singular	
	تَقِيَانِ	وَقَيْتُمَا	Dual	
	تَقِيْنَ	وَقَيْتُنَّ	Plural	
Masculine & Feminine	أَقِيْ	وَقَيْتُ	Singular	First Person
	نَقِيْ	وَقَيْنَا	Plural	

SUMMARY

<table>
<tr><td>اَلْفِعْلُ الصَّحِيْحُ</td><td>اَلْفِعْلُ الْمُعْتَلُّ</td></tr>
<tr><td> </td><td> </td></tr>
<tr><td>١ اَلسَّالِمُ</td><td>١ اَلْمِثَالُ</td></tr>
<tr><td>٢ اَلْمَهْمُوْزُ</td><td> </td></tr>
<tr><td> </td><td>اَلْمِثَالُ الْوَاوِيُّ | اَلْمِثَالُ الْيَائِيُّ</td></tr>
<tr><td>مَهْمُوْزُ الْفَاءِ | مَهْمُوْزُ الْعَيْنِ | مَهْمُوْزُ اللَّامِ</td><td>٢ اَلْأَجْوَفُ</td></tr>
<tr><td>٣ اَلْمُضَعَّفُ</td><td> </td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>اَلْأَجْوَفُ الْوَاوِيُّ | اَلْأَجْوَفُ الْيَائِيُّ</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>٣ اَلنَّاقِصُ</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td> </td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>اَلنَّاقِصُ الْوَاوِيُّ | اَلنَّاقِصُ الْيَائِيُّ</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>٤ اَللَّفِيْفُ الْمَقْرُوْنُ</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>٥ اَللَّفِيْفُ الْمَفْرُوْقُ</td></tr>
</table>

اَلْفِعْلُ الْأَمْرُ for the مَهْمُوْز Verbs

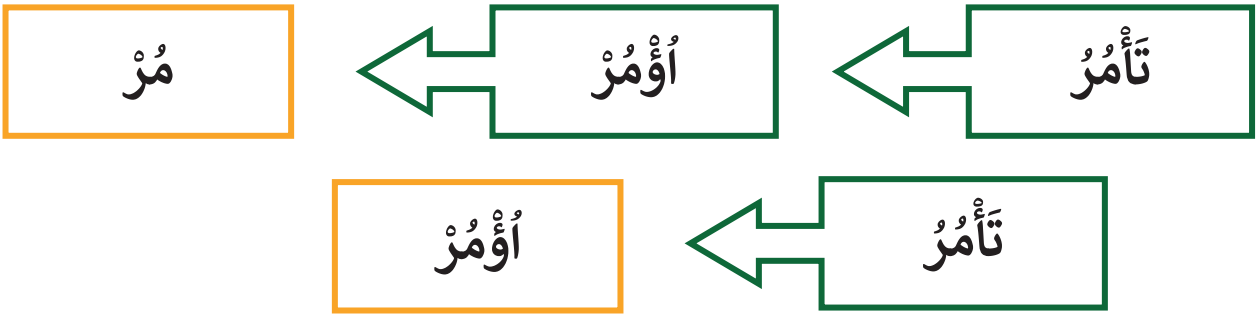
The conjugation of the imperative verbs for the مَهْمُوْز verbs differs slightly from the rules of the سَالِم verbs you learned previously. As for the اَلْفِعْلُ النَّهْيُ, they remain the same as the سَالِم verbs you previously learned.

When the مَهْمُوْزُ الْفَاءِ is from بَاب نَصَرَ يَنْصُرُ the هَمْزَةُ الْوَصْلِ is dropped. For example:

أَكَلَ يَأْكُلُ

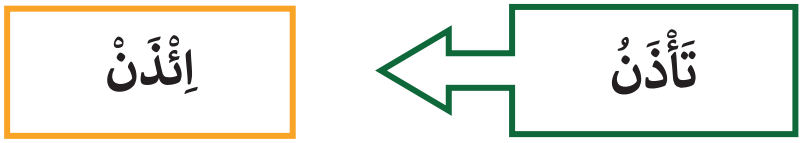
أَخَذَ يَأْخُذُ

However, there is an exception to the rule above with the verb أَمَرَ يَأْمُرُ as the هَمْزَةُ الْوَصْلِ for the imperative is sometimes kept and sometimes dropped.



When the مَهْمُوْزُ الْفَاءِ is from بَاب سَمِعَ يَسْمَعُ the هَمْزَةُ الْوَصْلِ is kept. For example:

أَذِنَ يَأْذَنُ



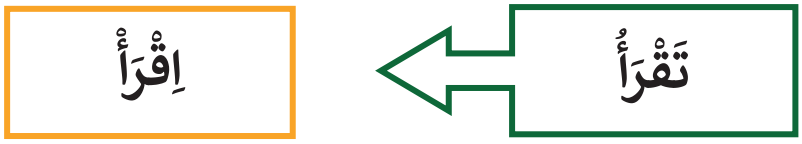
As for the مَهْمُوْزُ الْعَيْنِ, the هَمْزَةُ الْوَصْلِ can be dropped or kept. For example:

سَأَلَ يَسْأَلُ

سَئِمَ يَسْأَمُ

Lastly, the imperative for the مَهْمُوْزُ اللَّامِ, will be like the سَالِم verbs. For example:

قَرَأَ يَقْرَأُ



Conjugation Table of Imperative Verbs of مَهْمُوْزُ الْفَاءِ where the هَمْزَةُ الْوَصْلِ is Omitted

Take!	Command!	Number & Gender
خُذْ	مُرْ	Singular/Masculine
خُذَا	مُرَا	Dual/Masculine & Feminine
خُذُوْا	مُرُوْا	Plural Masculine
خُذِيْ	مُرِيْ	Singular Feminine
خُذَا	مُرَا	Dual/ Masculine & Feminine
خُذْنَ	مُرْنَ	Plural Feminine

Conjugation Table of Imperative Verbs of مَهْمُوْزُ الْفَاءِ where the هَمْزَةُ الْوَصْلِ is Kept

Command!	Number & Gender
اُوْمُرْ	Singular/Masculine
اُوْمُرَا	Dual/Masculine & Feminine
اُوْمُرُوْا	Plural Masculine
اُوْمُرِيْ	Singular Feminine
اُوْمُرَا	Dual/ Masculine & Feminine
اُوْمُرْنَ	Plural Feminine

Conjugation Table of Imperative Verbs of مَهْمُوْزُ الْعَيْنِ where the هَمْزَةُ الْوَصْلِ is Omitted

Ask!	Number & Gender
سَلْ	Singular/Masculine
سَلَا	Dual/Masculine & Feminine
سَلُوْا	Plural Masculine
سَلِيْ	Singular Feminine
سَلَا	Dual/ Masculine & Feminine
سَلْنَ	Plural Feminine

Conjugation Table of Imperative Verbs of مَهْمُوْزُ الْعَيْنِ where the هَمْزَةُ الْوَصْلِ is Kept

Ask!	Number & Gender
اِسْئَلْ	Singular/Masculine
اِسْئَلَا	Dual/Masculine & Feminine
اِسْئَلُوْا	Plural Masculine
اِسْئَلِيْ	Singular Feminine
اِسْئَلَا	Dual/ Masculine & Feminine
اِسْئَلْنَ	Plural Feminine

Conjugation Table of Negative Imperative for مَهْمُوْزُ الْفَاءِ Verbs

Do not take!	Number & Gender
لَا تَأْخُذْ	Singular/Masculine
لَا تَأْخُذَا	Dual/Masculine & Feminine
لَا تَأْخُذُوْا	Plural Masculine
لَا تَأْخُذِيْ	Singular Feminine
لَا تَأْخُذَا	Dual/ Masculine & Feminine
لَا تَأْخُذْنَ	Plural Feminine

Conjugation Table of Negative Imperative for مَهْمُوْزُ الْعَيْنِ Verbs

Do not ask!	Number & Gender
لَا تَسْأَلْ	Singular/Masculine
لَا تَسْأَلَا	Dual/Masculine & Feminine
لَا تَسْأَلُوْا	Plural Masculine
لَا تَسْأَلِيْ	Singular Feminine
لَا تَسْأَلَا	Dual/ Masculine & Feminine
لَا تَسْأَلْنَ	Plural Feminine

اَلْفِعْلُ الْأَمْرُ for the مُضَعَّف Verbs

If the مُضَعَّف verb is from بَاب نَصَرَ يَنْصُرُ, the first letter will be given a *ḍammah* and the doubled letter in the singular masculine form of the imperative can carry a *fatḥah*, *kasrah*, or a *ḍammah*:

رُدَّ	رُدَّ	رُدُّ

If the مُضَعَّف verb is from بَاب سَمِعَ يَسْمَعُ the first letter will be given a *fatḥah* and the doubled letter will carry a *fatḥah* or a *kasrah*:

مَسِّ	مَسَّ

If the مُضَعَّف verb is from بَاب ضَرَبَ يَضْرِبُ, the first letter will be given a *kasrah* and the doubled letter can also carry a *fatḥah* or a *kasrah*:

فِرِّ	فِرَّ

Conjugation Table of Imperative for مُضَعَّف Verbs from بَاب نَصَرَ يَنْصُرُ

Return!	Number & Gender
رُدَّ	Singular/Masculine
رُدَّا	Dual/Masculine & Feminine
رُدُّوْا	Plural Masculine
رُدِّيْ	Singular Feminine
رُدَّا	Dual/ Masculine & Feminine
اُرْدُدْنَ	Plural Feminine

Conjugation Table of Imperative for مُضَعَّف Verbs from بَاب سَمِعَ يَسْمَعُ

Touch!	Number & Gender
مَسَّ	Singular/Masculine
مَسَّا	Dual/Masculine & Feminine
مَسُّوْا	Plural Masculine
مَسِّيْ	Singular Feminine
مَسَّا	Dual/ Masculine & Feminine
اِمْسَسْنَ	Plural Feminine

Conjugation Table of Negative Imperative for مُضَعَّف Verbs from بَاب نَصَرَ يَنْصُرُ

Touch!	Number & Gender
لَا تَرُدَّ	Singular/Masculine
لَا تَرُدَّا	Dual/Masculine & Feminine
لَا تَرُدُّوْا	Plural Masculine
لَا تَرُدِّيْ	Singular Feminine
لَا تَرُدَّا	Dual/ Masculine & Feminine
لَا تَرْدُدْنَ	Plural Feminine

Conjugation Table of Negative Imperative for مُضَعَّف Verbs from بَاب ضَرَبَ يَضْرِبُ

Touch!	Number & Gender
لَا تَفِرَّ	Singular/Masculine
لَا تَفِرَّا	Dual/Masculine & Feminine
لَا تَفِرُّوْا	Plural Masculine
لَا تَفِرِّيْ	Singular Feminine
لَا تَفِرَّا	Dual/ Masculine & Feminine
لَا تَفْرِرْنَ	Plural Feminine

Verbs مِثَال for اَلْفِعْلُ النَّهْيُ and اَلْفِعْلُ الْأَمْرُ

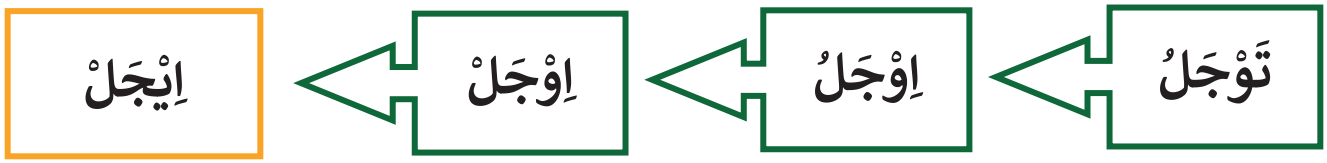
If the مِثَال وَاوِيّ verb is from بَاب ضَرَبَ يَضْرِبُ or بَاب فَتَحَ يَفْتَحُ you drop the first letter of the verb (ت) from the imperfect tense and put a *sukūn* on the last letter:

بَاب ضَرَبَ يَضْرِبُ – وَعَظَ يَعِظُ

بَاب فَتَحَ يَفْتَحُ– وَهَبَ يَهَبُ

If the مِثَال وَاوِيّ verb is from بَاب سَمِعَ يَسْمَعُ then the first letter is not dropped. Instead, it is replaced by a هَمْزَةُ الْوَصْلِ and the letter و is changed to a ي to facilitate easier reading:

بَاب سَمِعَ يَسْمَعُ– وَجِلَ يَوْجَلُ



The reason the first letter is either dropped or replaced with a هَمْزَةُ الْوَصْلِ in some cases depends on the باب the verb belongs to.

Since the imperative is derived from the imperfect tense, it's important to note that the letter is only dropped if it is dropped in the imperfect tense. For example, the imperfect tense of وَعَدَ is يَعِدُ. It was originally يَوْعِدُ, but the first root letter of the past tense was dropped, making the imperative عِدْ.

In contrast, when you form the imperative from the verb وَجِلَ (from بَاب سَمِعَ يَسْمَعُ), you begin with the imperfect tense for the second person: تَوْجَلُ. In this case, the first root letter (و) is not dropped. Instead, you remove the ت at the beginning, add a هَمْزَةُ الْوَصْلِ, and replace the و with a ي for easier reading. This gives you the imperative form: اِيْجَلْ.

For the مِثَال يَائِيّ verbs, since no letters are dropped when forming the imperfect tense from the perfect tense, we also do not drop any letters when forming the imperative. Therefore, forming the imperative for مِثَال يَائِيّ verbs follows the same process as forming the imperative for the مِثَال وَاوِيّ verbs from بَاب سَمِعَ يَسْمَعُ.

Conjugation Table of Imperative & Negative Imperative for مِثَال وَاوِيّ Verbs from بَاب ضَرَبَ يَضْرِبُ

Do not advise!	Advise!	Number & Gender
لَا تَعِظْ	عِظْ	Singular/Masculine
لَا تَعِظَا	عِظَا	Dual/Masculine & Feminine
لَا تَعِظُوْا	عِظُوْا	Plural Masculine
لَا تَعِظِيْ	عِظِيْ	Singular Feminine
لَا تَعِظَا	عِظَا	Dual/ Masculine & Feminine
لَا تَعِظْنَ	عِظْنَ	Plural Feminine

Conjugation Table of Imperative & Negative Imperative for مِثَال وَاوِيّ Verbs from بَاب فَتَحَ يَفْتَحُ

Do not give!	Give!	Number & Gender
لَا تَهَبْ	هَبْ	Singular/Masculine
لَا تَهَبَا	هَبَا	Dual/Masculine & Feminine
لَا تَهَبُوْا	هَبُوْا	Plural Masculine
لَا تَهَبِيْ	هَبِيْ	Singular Feminine
لَا تَهَبَا	هَبَا	Dual/ Masculine & Feminine
لَا تَهَبْنَ	هَبْنَ	Plural Feminine

Conjugation Table of Imperative & Negative Imperative for مِثَال وَاوِيّ Verbs from بَاب سَمِعَ يَسْمَعُ

Do not fear!	Fear!	Number & Gender
لَا تَوْجَلْ	اِيْجَلْ	Singular/Masculine
لَا تَوْجَلَا	اِيْجَلَا	Dual/Masculine & Feminine
لَا تَوْجَلُوْا	اِيْجَلُوْا	Plural Masculine
لَا تَوْجَلِيْ	اِيْجَلِيْ	Singular Feminine
لَا تَوْجَلَا	اِيْجَلَا	Dual/ Masculine & Feminine
لَا تَوْجَلْنَ	اِيْجَلْنَ	Plural Feminine

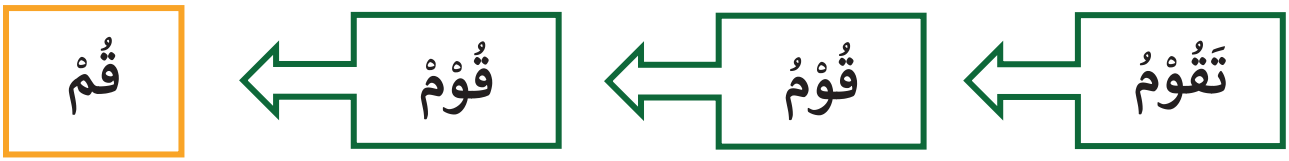
Conjugation Table of Imperative & Negative Imperative for مِثَال يَائِيّ Verbs from بَاب سَمِعَ يَسْمَعُ

Do not wake up!	Wake up!	Number & Gender
لَا تَيْقَظْ	اِيْقَظْ	Singular/Masculine
لَا تَيْقَظَا	اِيْقَظَا	Dual/Masculine & Feminine
لَا تَيْقَظُوْا	اِيْقَظُوْا	Plural Masculine
لَا تَيْقَظِيْ	اِيْقَظِيْ	Singular Feminine
لَا تَيْقَظَا	اِيْقَظَا	Dual/ Masculine & Feminine
لَا تَيْقَظْنَ	اِيْقَظْنَ	Plural Feminine

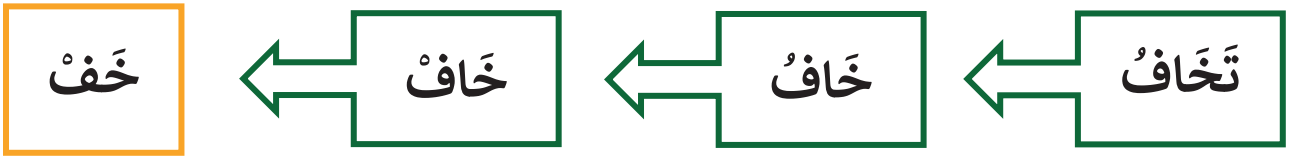
اَلْفِعْلُ الْأَمْرُ and اَلْفِعْلُ النَّهْيُ for أَجْوَف Verbs

Forming the imperative of أَجْوَف verbs is slightly more complex than that of مِثَال verbs. The verb قَامَ يَقُوْمُ (originally قَوَمَ يَقْوُمُ) is an أَجْوَف وَاوِيّ from بَاب نَصَرَ يَنْصُرُ. To form the imperative, you begin with the imperfect tense for the second person: تَقُوْمُ. Then, you remove the sign of the مُضَارِع, which here is the letter ت, leaving you with: قُوْمُ. As you have previously learned, the last letter of the imperative should be *sākin* (i.e., carry a *sukūn*), so it becomes: قُوْمْ. In Arabic, two *sukūns* cannot appear together, so the letter و (which is a weak letter) is dropped, resulting in: قُمْ.

بَاب نَصَرَ يَنْصُرُ – قَامَ يَقُوْمُ

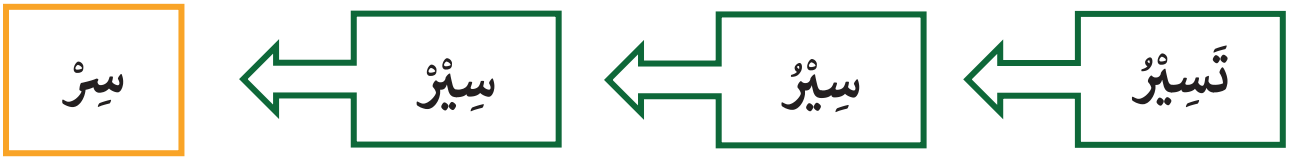


بَاب سَمِعَ يَسْمَعُ– خَافَ يَخَافُ



The same applies for أَجْوَف يَائِيّ verbs:

بَاب ضَرَبَ يَضْرِبُ – سَارَ يَسِيْرُ



Note: The letters و and ي are only dropped in the conjugation of the second person singular masculine and plural feminine forms and retained in the remaining forms.

Conjugation Table of Imperative & Negative Imperative for أَجْوَف وَاوِيّ Verbs from بَاب نَصَرَ يَنْصُرُ

Do not stand!	Stand!	Number & Gender
لَا تَقُمْ	قُمْ	Singular/Masculine
لَا تَقُوْمَا	قُوْمَا	Dual/Masculine & Feminine
لَا تَقُوْمُوْا	قُوْمُوْا	Plural Masculine
لَا تَقُوْمِيْ	قُوْمِيْ	Singular Feminine
لَا تَقُوْمَا	قُوْمَا	Dual/ Masculine & Feminine
لَا تَقُمْنَ	قُمْنَ	Plural Feminine

Conjugation Table of Imperative & Negative Imperative for أَجْوَف وَاوِيّ Verbs from بَاب سَمِعَ يَسْمَعُ

Do not fear!	Fear!	Number & Gender
لَا تَخَفْ	خَفْ	Singular/Masculine
لَا تَخَافَا	خَافَا	Dual/Masculine & Feminine
لَا تَخَافُوْا	خَافُوْا	Plural Masculine
لَا تَخَافِيْ	خَافِيْ	Singular Feminine
لَا تَخَافَا	خَافَا	Dual/ Masculine & Feminine
لَا تَخَفْنَ	خَفْنَ	Plural Feminine

Conjugation Table of Imperative & Negative Imperative for أَجْوَف يَائِيّ Verbs from بَاب ضَرَبَ يَضْرِبُ

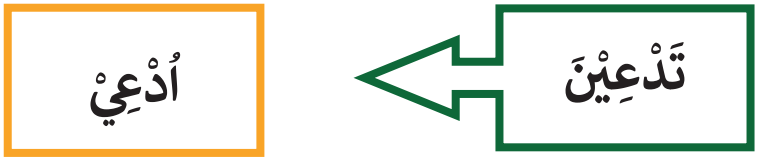
Do not walk!	Walk!	Number & Gender
لَا تَسِرْ	سِرْ	Singular/Masculine
لَا تَسِيْرَا	سِيْرَا	Dual/Masculine & Feminine
لَا تَسِيْرُوْا	سِيْرُوْا	Plural Masculine
لَا تَسِيْرِيْ	سِيْرِيْ	Singular Feminine
لَا تَسِيْرَا	سِيْرَا	Dual/ Masculine & Feminine
لَا تَسِرْنَ	سِرْنَ	Plural Feminine

Verbs for نَاقِص اَلْفِعْلُ النَّهْيُ and اَلْفِعْلُ الْأَمْرُ

If the نَاقِص وَاوِيّ is from بَاب نَصَرَ يَنْصُرُ , for example: دَعَا يَدْعُوْ, the imperative will be on the pattern of اُنْصُرْ. However, since the last letter is a weak letter, it is dropped so it becomes:

بَاب نَصَرَ يَنْصُرُ – دَعَا يَدْعُوْ

The weak letter is also dropped from the singular feminine form:



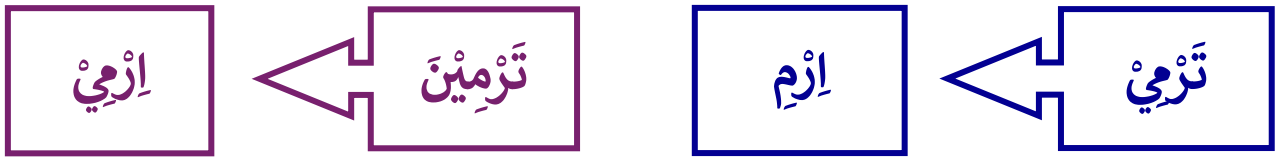
اُدْعِيْ was originally اُدْعُوِيْ. The weak letter و was dropped.

The last weak letter is kept for the remaining forms.

As for the نَاقِص يَائِيّ , its last letter is also dropped if it is from بَاب ضَرَبَ يَضْرِبُ, for example: رَمَى يَرْمِيْ, the imperative will be on the pattern of اِضْرِبْ. However, since the last letter is a weak letter, it is dropped from the singular masculine and feminine forms and becomes:

بَاب ضَرَبَ يَضْرِبُ – رَمَى يَرْمِيْ

Feminine **Masculine**



اِرْمِيْ was originally اِرْمِيِيْ. The weak letter ي was dropped.

Conjugation Table of Imperative & Negative Imperative for نَاقِص وَاوِيّ Verbs from بَاب نَصَرَ يَنْصُرُ

Do not call!	Call!	Number & Gender
لَا تَدْعُ	اُدْعُ	Singular/Masculine
لَا تَدْعُوَا	اُدْعُوَا	Dual/Masculine & Feminine
لَا تَدْعُوْا	اُدْعُوْا	Plural Masculine
لَا تَدْعِيْ	اُدْعِيْ	Singular Feminine
لَا تَدْعُوَا	اُدْعُوَا	Dual/ Masculine & Feminine
لَا تَدْعِيْنَ	اُدْعُوْنَ	Plural Feminine

Conjugation Table of Imperative & Negative Imperative for نَاقِص يَائِيّ Verbs from بَاب ضَرَبَ يَضْرِبُ

Do not throw!	Throw!	Number & Gender
لَا تَرْمِ	اِرْمِ	Singular/Masculine
لَا تَرْمِيَا	اِرْمِيَا	Dual/Masculine & Feminine
لَا تَرْمُوْا	اِرْمُوْا	Plural Masculine
لَا تَرْمِيْ	اِرْمِيْ	Singular Feminine
لَا تَرْمِيَا	اِرْمِيَا	Dual/ Masculine & Feminine
لَا تَرْمِيْنَ	اِرْمِيْنَ	Plural Feminine

Conjugation Table of Imperative & Negative Imperative for نَاقِص وَاوِيّ Verbs from بَاب سَمِعَ يَسْمَعُ

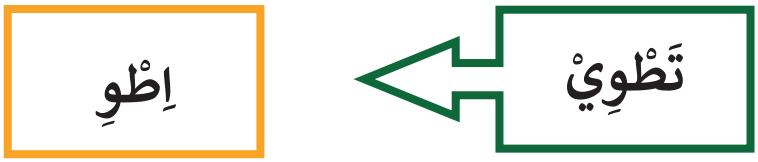
Do not be pleased!	Be pleased!	Number & Gender
لَا تَرْضَ	اِرْضَ	Singular/Masculine
لَا تَرْضَيَا	اِرْضَيَا	Dual/Masculine & Feminine
لَا تَرْضَوْا	اِرْضَوْا	Plural Masculine
لَا تَرْضَيْ	اِرْضَيْ	Singular Feminine
لَا تَرْضَيَا	اِرْضَيَا	Dual/ Masculine & Feminine
لَا تَرْضَيْنَ	اِرْضَيْنَ	Plural Feminine

اَلْفِعْلُ الْأَمْرُ and اَلْفِعْلُ النَّهْيُ for لَفِيْف Verbs

لَفِيْف verbs are those verbs that have two weak letters within them. If the weak letters are the second and third letters, it is called لَفِيْف مَقْرُوْن. If the weak letters are the first and third letters, it is called لَفِيْف مَفْرُوْق.

Since the لَفِيْف مَقْرُوْن is mostly from بَاب ضَرَبَ يَضْرِبُ, its imperative form will be on the pattern of اِضْرِبْ. For example:

بَاب ضَرَبَ يَضْرِبُ – طَوٰى يَطْوِيْ

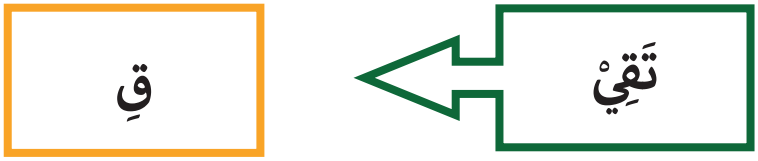


The weak letter ي is removed and the letter و is kept.

As for the لَفِيْف مَفْرُوْق, since they are also mostly from بَاب ضَرَبَ يَضْرِبُ, its imperative form will be on the pattern of اِضْرِبْ as well. However, there is one notable difference between the imperative of the لَفِيْف مَقْرُوْن and the imperative of the لَفِيْف مَفْرُوْق.

In the imperative form of a لَفِيْف مَفْرُوْق verb, the weak letter ي is removed, and the letter و is kept. In the case of a لَفِيْف مَفْرُوْق verb, both weak letters are dropped, leaving only the middle root letter. Therefore, the imperative form of a لَفِيْف مَفْرُوْق verb consists of only one letter for the singular masculine form. For example:

بَاب ضَرَبَ يَضْرِبُ – وَقٰى يَقِيْ



The letter ي returns in the dual and feminine plural forms and is removed in the masculine plural and feminine singular forms.

Conjugation Table of Imperative & Negative Imperative for لَفِيْف مَفْرُوْق Verbs from بَاب ضَرَبَ يَضْرِبُ

Do not protect!	Protect!	Number & Gender
لَا تَقِ	قِ	Singular/Masculine
لَا تَقِيَا	قِيَا	Dual/Masculine & Feminine
لَا تَقُوْا	قُوْا	Plural Masculine
لَا تَقِيْ	قِيْ	Singular Feminine
لَا تَقِيَا	قِيَا	Dual/ Masculine & Feminine
لَا تَقِيْنَ	قِيْنَ	Plural Feminine

Conjugation Table of Imperative & Negative Imperative for لَفِيْف مَقْرُوْن Verbs from بَاب ضَرَبَ يَضْرِبُ

Do not fold!	Fold!	Number & Gender
لَا تَطْوِ	اِطْوِ	Singular/Masculine
لَا تَطْوِيَا	اِطْوِيَا	Dual/Masculine & Feminine
لَا تَطْوُوْا	اِطْوُوْا	Plural Masculine
لَا تَطْوِيْ	اِطْوِيْ	Singular Feminine
لَا تَطْوِيَا	اِطْوِيَا	Dual/ Masculine & Feminine
لَا تَطْوِيْنَ	اِطْوِيْنَ	Plural Feminine

Lesson 40

إِنَّ وَ أَخَوَاتُهَا - إِنَّ and its Sisters

These particles are known as اَلْحُرُوْفُ الْمُشَبَّهَةُ بِالْفِعْلِ (particles resembling verbs) or اَلْحُرُوْفُ النَّاسِخَةُ (abrogative particles), because when they enter a nominal sentence, they abrogate the grammatical roles of its elements and apply a new grammatical rule.

Specifically, when they enter a nominal sentence: The مُبْتَدَأ becomes مَنْصُوْب and is called the اِسْمُ إِنَّ, and the خَبَر remains مَرْفُوْع and is called the خَبَرُ إِنَّ. These particles are used for specific meanings such as emphasis, comparison, hope, or contrast. They are six in total:

كَأَنَّ	أَنَّ	إِنَّ
As if/Like	That	Verily
لَعَلَّ	لَيْتَ	لٰكِنَّ
Perhaps	If only/Wish	But

أَنَّ and إِنَّ

These two particles are used to add emphasis to a sentence. For example:

اَلطَّالِبُ مُجْتَهِدٌ	إِنَّ الطَّالِبَ مُجْتَهِدٌ
The student is hardworking	Indeed, the student is hardworking

In the two examples above, the first sentence is a standard nominal sentence consisting of a مُبْتَدَأ and خَبَر. In the example on the left, the addition of the particle of emphasis إِنَّ causes the word اَلطَّالِبُ to become مَنْصُوْب, as it is now the اِسْمُ إِنَّ. The word مُجْتَهِدٌ becomes the خَبَرُ إِنَّ and remains in the مَرْفُوْع case.

The difference between إِنَّ and أَنَّ

إِنَّ appears with a *kasrah* (إِنَّ) in the following five situations:

1) When it appears at the beginning of a sentence. For example:

Indeed, the teacher is present	إِنَّ الْمُعَلِّمَ حَاضِرٌ

2) When it appears after the verb قَالَ or any of its derived forms. For example:

He said, "Indeed, Lūṭ is in it"	قَالَ إِنَّ فِيْهَا لُوْطًا

3) When it appears after a قَسَمٌ (oath). In this case, the خَبَر of إِنَّ is usually accompanied by the لَامُ التَّوْكِيدِ. For example:

By Allāh, indeed the truth is surely clear	وَاللهِ إِنَّ الْحَقَّ لَبَيِّنٌ

4) When it appears after an اِسْم مَوْصُوْل. For example:

I thanked the one who indeed helped me	شَكَرْتُ الَّذِيْ إِنَّهُ سَاعَدَنِيْ

5) When it appears at the beginning of a جُمْلَة حَالِيَّة (circumstantial sentence - this will be covered in book 2). For example:

Zayd came while indeed he was smiling	جَاءَ زَيْدٌ وَإِنَّهُ مُبْتَسِمٌ

On the other hand, أَنَّ typically appears in the middle of a sentence, following a verb or a particle that introduces a clause. Below are a few examples:

"And they know that Indeed Allāh, He is the manifest truth"	وَيَعْلَمُوْنَ أَنَّ اللهَ هُوَ الْحَقُّ الْمُبِيْنُ
I heard that the teacher is sick	سَمِعْتُ أَنَّ الْمُعَلِّمَ مَرِيْضٌ
I knew that Allāh is Forgiving and Merciful	عَلِمْتُ أَنَّ اللهَ غَفُوْرٌ رَّحِيْمٌ

The اِسْمُ إِنَّ as an attached pronoun

The اِسْمُ إِنَّ can also be an attached pronoun. When this happens, the attached pronoun - being مَبْنِيّ (indeclinable) - will not show any visible change. However, it will be grammatically classified as the اِسْمُ إِنَّ and considered مَنْصُوْب. For example:

"Indeed, He is ever accepting of repentance"	إِنَّهُ كَانَ تَوَّابًا
"Indeed, We have sent down the Reminder, and indeed, We will surely preserve it"	إِنَّا نَحْنُ نَزَّلْنَا الذِّكْرَ وَإِنَّا لَهُ لَحَافِظُوْنَ
Indeed, they are hardworking	إِنَّهُمْ مُجْتَهِدُوْنَ

Important Notes About the خَبَرُ إِنَّ

1. At times, the خَبَرُ إِنَّ is introduced with the particle لَ to further strengthen the emphasis of the sentence. For example:

"Indeed, the Judgement is bound to occur"	إِنَّ الدِّيْنَ لَوَاقِعٌ
Indeed, the student is certainly hardworking	إِنَّ الطَّالِبَ لَمُجْتَهِدٌ

2. The خَبَرُ إِنَّ can also be a prepositional or *iḍāfah* phrase. For example:

"Indeed, mankind is certainly in loss"	إِنَّ الْإِنْسَانَ لَفِيْ خُسْرٍ
"Indeed, the guidance is the guidance of Allāh"	إِنَّ الْهُدٰى هُدَى اللهِ

3. The خَبَرُ إِنَّ can also be a جُمْلَة اِسْمِيَّة or a جُمْلَة فِعْلِيَّة. For example:

"Indeed, Allāh loves those who constantly repent"	إِنَّ اللهَ يُحِبُّ التَّوَّابِيْنَ
Indeed, the students are going to the school	إِنَّ الطُّلَّابَ يَذْهَبُوْنَ إِلَى الْمَدْرَسَةِ
Indeed, the boy's brother is a student	إِنَّ الْوَلَدَ أَخُوْهُ طَالِبٌ

4. If the اِسْمُ إِنَّ is indefinite, and its خَبَر is a prepositional phrase, then the خَبَر comes before the اِسْم. In this case, it will be called خَبَرٌ مُقَدَّمٌ (advanced khabar) and اِسْمٌ مُؤَخَّرٌ (delayed Ism). For example: If you want to say:

"Indeed, a man is in the house"

You may assume that the correct translation, based on the typical word order, would be:

إِنَّ رَجُلًا فِي الْبَيْتِ

However, this would be incorrect and sounds unnatural in Arabic. The correct way to say it is:

إِنَّ فِي الْبَيْتِ رَجُلًا

In this construction, the خَبَر (which is فِي الْبَيْتِ) has been advanced, and the اِسْمُ إِنَّ (which is رَجُلًا) has been delayed. Below are a few more examples:

"Indeed, with hardship comes ease"	إِنَّ مَعَ الْعُسْرِ يُسْرًا
"Indeed, for the righteous is success"	إِنَّ لِلْمُتَّقِيْنَ مَفَازًا
Indeed, in the masjid is a righteous man	إِنَّ فِي الْمَسْجِدِ رَجُلًا صَالِحًا

كَأَنَّ

The particle كَأَنَّ is used to express تَشْبِيْه (resemblance or comparison). The effect of the comparison depends on the nature of the خَبَر.

If the خَبَر of كَأَنَّ is a جَامِد noun (i.e. a non-derived noun), it conveys strong, fixed resemblance, almost like an identity.

If the خَبَر of كَأَنَّ is مُشْتَقّ (i.e. a derived noun), it conveys an ongoing or descriptive resemblance.

مَعْرِفَة	نَكِرَة
كَأَنَّ زَيْدًا أَسَدٌ	كَأَنَّ الطَّالِبَ قَائِمٌ
It is as though Zayd is a lion	It is as though the student is standing

لٰكِنَّ

The particle لٰكِنَّ is used to indicate contrast or exception. It shows that what comes after it disagrees with or qualifies what was mentioned before. For this usage, it is important that a statement or description has already been made, and then لٰكِنَّ introduces something different from or contrary to it. For example:

لَيْسَ عَلَيْكَ هُدٰهُمْ وَلٰكِنَّ اللّٰهَ يَهْدِيْ مَنْ يَّشَآءُ	*“Not upon you (Muḥammad) is their guidance, but Allāh guides whom He wills”*
اَلْبَيْتُ كَبِيْرٌ لٰكِنَّ الْحَدِيْقَةَ صَغِيْرَةٌ	The house is big, but the garden is small
اَلطَّقْسُ جَمِيْلٌ لٰكِنَّ الْهَوَاءَ بَارِدٌ	The weather is nice, but the air is cold

لَيْتَ

لَيْتَ is used to express a wish or longing. It signifies a desire for something that is unlikely or impossible to attain. For example:

The disbeliever will say, "If only I were dust!"	يَقُوْلُ الْكٰفِرُ يَا لَيْتَنِيْ كُنْتُ تُرَابًا
If only the youth would return	لَيْتَ الشَّبَابَ يَعُوْدُ
If only the Muslims were united	لَيْتَ الْمُسْلِمِيْنَ مُتَّحِدُوْنَ

لَعَلَّ

لَعَلَّ is used to express hope or expectation. It is used in situations where the speaker desires something and thinks it may be possible to obtain it. It is not certain, but there is a chance that the desired outcome will occur. For example:

“Perhaps the Hour is near”	لَعَلَّ السَّاعَةَ قَرِيْبٌ
“Perhaps he may take heed or fear”	لَعَلَّهُ يَتَذَكَّرُ أَوْ يَخْشٰى
Perhaps the students are successful	لَعَلَّ الطَّالِبِيْنَ مُجْتَهِدُوْنَ

Lesson 41

The مَنْقُوْصٌ, the مَقْصُوْرٌ, and the مَمْدُوْدٌ Nouns

These are three special types of nouns in Arabic grammar that behave differently in certain grammatical contexts (especially in case endings and *tanwīn*).

1) اَلْاِسْمُ الْمَنْقُوْصُ

In the Arabic language, the اِسْمٌ مَنْقُوْصٌ is a noun that ends with a ي *sākinah* (يْ) and the letter before it has a *kasrah*. For example:

الْمُنَادِيْ	اَلْمُحَامِيْ	اَلْقَاضِيْ
The caller	The lawyer	The judge

This type of noun is called اِسْم مَنْقُوْص because, when used in an indefinite form, its final ي is dropped, and the letter before it takes two *kasrahs* and becomes indefinite. For example:

مُنَادٍ	مُحَامٍ	قَاضٍ
A caller	A lawyer	A judge

The إِعْرَاب of the اِسْم مَنْقُوْص when it is singular:

The إِعْرَاب of the اِسْم مَنْقُوْص can sometimes be visible (ظَاهِرِيٌّ) and sometimes estimated (تَقْدِيْرِيٌّ). For example:

مَرْفُوْع
حَكَمَ الْقَاضِيْ بِالْعَدْلِ
The judge ruled with justice

In this sentence, الْقَاضِي is the فَاعِل and is therefore in the مَرْفُوْع case, but the *ḍammah* is تَقْدِيْرِيّ.

مَنْصُوْب
إِنَّ الْقَاضِيَ حَكَمَ بِالْعَدْلِ
Indeed the judge ruled with justice

In this sentence, الْقَاضِيَ is the اِسْمُ إِنَّ and is therefore in the مَنْصُوْب case, and the *fatḥah* is ظَاهِرِيّ.

مَجْرُوْر
مَكْتَبُ الْقَاضِيْ مُغْلَقٌ
The judge's office is closed

In this sentence, الْقَاضِي is مُضَاف إِلَيْه and is therefore in the مَجْرُوْر case, but the *kasrah* is تَقْدِيْرِيّ.

These three grammatical states of the اِسْم مَنْقُوْص appear only when it is used in the singular form.

The إِعْرَاب of the اِسْم مَنْقُوْص when it is dual:

If the اِسْم مَنْقُوْص is dual, then you follow the usual rules of forming dual nouns: add انِ in the مَرْفُوْع case, and يْنِ in the مَنْصُوْب and مَجْرُوْر cases. For example:

مَرْفُوْع	مَنْصُوْب	مَجْرُوْر
جَاءَ الدَّاعِيَانِ	رَأَيْتُ الدَّاعِيَيْنِ	مَرَرْتُ بِالدَّاعِيَيْنِ
The two callers came	I saw the two callers	I passed by the two callers

The إِعْرَاب of the اِسْم مَنْقُوْص when it is plural:

When making the اِسْم مَنْقُوْص plural, its final ي is removed in the مَرْفُوْع case, and a و is added. In the مَنْصُوْب and مَجْرُوْر cases, a ي is added:

مَجْرُوْر	مَنْصُوْب	مَرْفُوْع
تَكَلَّمْتُ مَعَ الْمُحَامِيْنَ	رَأَيْتُ الْمُحَامِيْنَ	وَصَلَ الْمُحَامُوْنَ إِلَى الْمَحْكَمَةِ
I spoke with the lawyers	I saw the lawyers	The lawyers arrived at the court

2) اَلْاِسْمُ الْمَقْصُوْرُ

The اِسْم مَقْصُوْر is a noun that ends with an *alif maqṣūrah*, and the letter before it has a *fatḥah*. For example:

مُصْطَفٰى	مَقْهٰى	مُسْتَشْفٰى
Muṣṭafā	Cafe	Hospital

The إِعْرَاب of the اِسْم مَقْصُوْر when it is singular:

The إِعْرَاب of the اِسْم مَقْصُوْر , when it appears in the singular form, will be estimated (تَقْدِيْرِيّ) in all three cases. For example:

مَجْرُوْر	مَنْصُوْب	مَرْفُوْع
جَلَسْتُ فِيْ مَقْهٰى صَغِيْرٍ	زَارَ أَحْمَدُ مَقْهٰى جَدِيْدًا	هٰذَا مَقْهٰى جَمِيْلٌ
I sat in a small cafe	Aḥmad visited a new cafe	This is a beautiful cafe

The إِعْرَاب of the اِسْم مَقْصُوْر when it is dual:

Making the اِسْم مَقْصُوْر into the dual form can be a little tricky.

a) If the *alif* is the third letter of the word:

You must first find out the original letter of the *alif*. To do that, change the noun into its verb form then find its مُضَارِع. The مُضَارِع will show if the *alif* comes from a و or a ي. For example:

If the اِسْم مَقْصُوْر noun is هُدًى (guidance), the third letter is an *alif*. To find its origin, you look up the verb هَدَى in the dictionary. The

dictionary will give you the present tense form: يَهْدِيْ. Now you know that the *alif* in هُدٰى originally comes from a ي.

If the اِسْم مَقْصُوْر noun is عَصًا (stick), you look up the verb عَصَا, and the dictionary will show the present tense: يَعْصُوْ. This tells you that the *alif* originally comes from a و.

Once you have determined whether the *alif* was originally a و or a ي, you simply replace the *alif* (the third letter) with its original letter. Then, add انِ for the مَرْفُوْع case, and ينِ for the مَنْصُوْب and مَجْرُوْر cases. For example:

اِسْم مَقْصُوْر	اَلْمَاضِيْ	اَلْمُضَارِع	مُثَنّٰى مَرْفُوْع	مُثَنّٰى مَنْصُوْب/ مَجْرُوْر
هُدًى	هَدٰى	يَهْدِيْ	هُدَيَانِ	هُدَيَيْنِ
عَصًا	عَصَا	يَعْصُوْ	عَصَوَانِ	عَصَوَيْنِ

b. If the *alif* is the fourth or fifth letter of the word:

If the *alif* in the اِسْم مَقْصُوْر noun comes after the third letter (i.e. it is the fourth or fifth letter), then the *alif* will be changed to a ي. For example:

اِسْم مَقْصُوْر	مُثَنّٰى مَرْفُوْع	مُثَنّٰى مَنْصُوْب/ مَجْرُوْر
مُسْتَشْفًى	مُسْتَشْفَيَانِ	مُسْتَشْفَيَيْنِ
مُصْطَفًى	مُصْطَفَيَانِ	مُصْطَفَيَيْنِ

The إِعْرَاب of the اِسْم مَقْصُوْر when it is plural:

To make the اِسْم مَقْصُوْر into a sound masculine plural (جَمْعُ الْمُذَكَّرِ السَّالِمِ) or sound feminine plural (جَمْعُ الْمُؤَنَّثِ السَّالِمِ), the *alif* at the end of the اِسْم مَقْصُوْر is dropped.

For the جَمْعُ الْمُذَكَّرِ السَّالِمُ the *alif* at the end is removed and ونَ is added in the مَرْفُوْع case, and ينَ for the مَنْصُوْب and مَجْرُوْر cases. For example:

جَمْعُ الْمُذَكَّرِ السَّالِمِ (مَنْصُوْب/ مَجْرُوْر)	جَمْعُ الْمُذَكَّرِ السَّالِمِ (مَرْفُوْع)	اِسْم مَقْصُوْر
أَعْلَيْنَ	أَعْلَوْنَ	أَعْلٰى
مُصْطَفَيْنَ	مُصْطَفَوْنَ	مُصْطَفٰى

When the اِسْم مَقْصُوْر is made into a جَمْعُ الْمُؤَنَّثِ السَّالِمِ, its *alif* is treated differently based on its position in the word.

- If the *alif* is the third letter, it is returned to its original letter. For example:

جَمْعُ الْمُؤَنَّثِ السَّالِمِ (مَنْصُوْب/ مَجْرُوْر)	جَمْعُ الْمُؤَنَّثِ السَّالِمِ (مَرْفُوْع)	اِسْم مَقْصُوْر
هُدَيَاتٍ	هُدَيَاتٌ	هُدًى
عَصَوَاتٍ	عَصَوَاتٌ	عَصًا

- If the *alif* is the fourth letter or later, it is changed to a ي. For example:

جَمْعُ الْمُؤَنَّثِ السَّالِمِ (مَنْصُوْب/ مَجْرُوْر)	جَمْعُ الْمُؤَنَّثِ السَّالِمِ (مَرْفُوْع)	اِسْم مَقْصُوْر
كُبْرَيَاتٍ	كُبْرَيَاتٌ	كُبْرٰى
دُنْيَيَاتٍ	دُنْيَيَاتٌ	دُنْيَا

3) اَلْاِسْمُ الْمَمْدُوْدُ

The اِسْمٌ مَمْدُوْدٌ is a noun that ends with a *hamzah* (ء) preceded by an *alif*. For example:

صَحْرَاءُ	سَمَاءٌ	رَجَاءٌ
Desert	Sky	Hope

The إِعْرَاب of the اِسْم مَمْدُوْد when it is singular:

The إِعْرَاب of a singular اِسْم مَمْدُوْد is determined like any other noun based on its position in the sentence. If it is مَرْفُوْع, a visible *ḍammah* will appear on the *hamzah*. If it is مَنْصُوْب, a visible *fatḥah* will appear. If it is مَجْرُوْر, a visible *kasrah* will appear. For example:

مَجْرُوْر	مَنْصُوْب	مَرْفُوْع	اِسْم مَمْدُوْد
سَمَاءٍ	سَمَاءً	سَمَاءٌ	سَمَاءٌ
رَجَاءٍ	رَجَاءً	رَجَاءٌ	رَجَاءٌ

Note: If the اِسْم مَمْدُوْد is non-declinable (غَيْرُ مُنْصَرِفٍ), then in the مَجْرُوْر state, it will take a *fatḥah* instead of a *kasrah*. For example:

نَزَلْتُ فِيْ صَحْرَاءَ	I descended into the desert

The إِعْرَاب of the اِسْم مَمْدُوْد when it is dual:

To make the اِسْم مَمْدُوْد into the dual form, we look at the nature of the *hamzah*: If the *hamzah* is a feminine ending (تَأْنِيْث), then it will be replaced with a و. For example:

مَجْرُوْر	مَنْصُوْب	مَرْفُوْع	اِسْم مَمْدُوْد
خَضْرَاوَيْنِ	خَضْرَاوَيْنِ	خَضْرَاوَانِ	خَضْرَاءُ
شَقْرَاوَيْنِ	شَقْرَاوَيْنِ	شَقْرَاوَانِ	شَقْرَاءُ

But if the *hamzah* is original (part of the root), then it remains, and only انِ or ينِ is added based on the grammatical case. For example:

اِسْم مَمْدُوْد	مَرْفُوْع	مَنْصُوْب	مَجْرُوْر
فِضَاءٌ	فِضَاءَانِ	فِضَاءَيْنِ	فِضَاءَيْنِ

A sign of a *hamzah* being original is that the root verb itself contains a *hamzah*, such as: قَرَأَ (he read), مَلَأَ (he filled). If the *hamzah* in the اِسْم مَمْدُوْد comes from a converted و or ي, then when forming the dual, there is flexibility: you can either keep the *hamzah* or change it into a و. For example:

اِسْم مَمْدُوْد	مَرْفُوْع	مَنْصُوْب	مَجْرُوْر
بِنَاءٌ	بِنَاءَانِ	بِنَاءَيْنِ	بِنَاءَيْنِ
بِنَاءٌ	بِنَاوَانِ	بِنَاوَيْنِ	بِنَاوَيْنِ

To determine the origin of any noun, you should look at its root verb - see which verb it is derived from and what its مُضَارِع form is. Whatever letter appears at the end of the present tense verb is the original letter that was later changed to a *hamzah* in the noun form. Below are few examples.

The word رَجَاءٌ comes from the verb رَجَا. Its present tense form is يَرْجُوْ, which ends with a و. This tells us that the *hamzah* in رَجَاء was originally a و.

The word بَكَاءٌ comes from the verb بَكَى. Its present tense form is يَبْكِيْ, which ends with a ي. This means that the *hamzah* in بَكَاءٌ was originally a ي.

The إِعْرَاب of the اِسْم مَمْدُوْد when it is plural:

To make the اِسْم مَمْدُوْد into the plural form (جَمْعُ الْمُذَكَّرِ السَّالِمِ or sound جَمْعُ الْمُؤَنَّثِ السَّالِمِ), you must look at the *hamzah* and determine what changes need to be made.

If the *hamzah* is original, then it will stay, and the plural will be formed in the regular sound pattern, adding ونَ and اتٌ in the مَرْفُوْع case and ينَ and اتٍ in the مَنْصُوْب and مَجْرُوْر cases. For example:

اِسْم مَمْدُوْد	مَرْفُوْع	مَنْصُوْب	مَجْرُوْر
قُرَّاءٌ	قُرَّاءُوْنَ	قُرَّاءِيْنَ	قُرَّاءِيْنَ
قُرَّاءٌ	قُرَّاءَاتٌ	قُرَّاءَاتٍ	قُرَّاءَاتٍ

But if the *hamzah* comes from a converted و or ي, then both are allowed: the *hamzah* may remain, or it may be changed to a و. For example:

اِسْم مَمْدُوْد	مَرْفُوْع	مَنْصُوْب	مَجْرُوْر
عَدَّاءٌ	عَدَّاءُوْنَ	عَدَّاءِيْنَ	عَدَّاءِيْنَ
عَدَّاءٌ	عَدَّاوُوْنَ	عَدَّاوِيْنَ	عَدَّاوِيْنَ
سَمَاءٌ	سَمَاءَاتٌ	سَمَاءَاتٍ	سَمَاءَاتٍ
سَمَاءٌ	سَمَاوَاتٌ	سَمَاوَاتٍ	سَمَاوَاتٍ

If the final *hamzah* is a feminine *hamzah* (تَأْنِيْثٌ), then it is replaced with a و, and the regular sound feminine plural marker (ات) is added. For example:

اِسْم مَمْدُوْد	مَرْفُوْع	مَنْصُوْب	مَجْرُوْر
صَحْرَاءُ	صَحْرَاوَاتٌ	صَحْرَاوَاتٍ	صَحْرَاوَاتٍ

End of Book 1 Content

- With the completion of the lessons above, the content of Book 1 now ends.
- From here, you will find a comprehensive list of Arabic vocabulary arranged under various headings such as Masjid, Kitchen, House, and others.
- Each word is provided with both its singular and plural forms. Memorise these carefully, as they will significantly enhance your Arabic vocabulary and allow you to construct complete sentences with greater ease.
- Following the vocabulary lists, you will find 25 exercises designed to reinforce what you have learnt throughout the lessons.
- Each exercise is linked to the relevant lesson number, so you may conveniently refer back for revision or further guidance whenever needed.
- This marks an important step in your journey - continue forward with confidence, practice regularly, and you will soon see the fruits of your effort.

Colours - أَلْوَانٌ

Colour	Arabic (masculine)	Arabic (feminine)
Yellow	أَصْفَرُ	صَفْرَاءُ
Red	أَحْمَرُ	حَمْرَاءُ
Green	أَخْضَرُ	خَضْرَاءُ
Blue	أَزْرَقُ	زَرْقَاءُ
White	أَبْيَضُ	بَيْضَاءُ
Black	أَسْوَدُ	سَوْدَاءُ
Pink	وَرْدِيٌّ	وَرْدِيَّةٌ
Orange	بُرْتُقالِيٌّ	بُرْتُقالِيَّةٌ
Purple	أُرْجُوانِيٌّ	أُرْجُوَانِيَّةٌ
Grey	رَمادِيٌّ	رَمَادِيَّةٌ
Brown	بُنِّيٌّ	بُنِّيَّةٌ
Violet	بَنَفْسَجِيٌّ	بَنَفْسَجِيَّةٌ

Days of the Week - أَيَّامُ الْأُسْبُوْعِ

Day	Arabic
Sunday	اَلْأَحَدُ
Monday	اَلْإِثْنَيْنُ
Tuesday	اَلثُّلَاثَاءُ
Wednesday	اَلْأَرْبِعَاءُ
Thursday	اَلْخَمِيْسُ
Friday	اَلْجُمُعَةُ
Saturday	اَلسَّبْتُ

Seasons - اَلْفُصُوْلُ

Season	Arabic
Spring	اَلرَّبِيْعُ
Summer	اَلصَّيْفُ
Autumn	اَلْخَرِيْفُ
Winter	اَلشِّتَاءُ

Arabic Numbers – اَلْأَرْقَامُ الْعَرَبِيَّةُ

Number		Arabic	
1	One	وَاحِدٌ	١
2	Two	اِثْنَانِ	٢
3	Three	ثَلَاثَةٌ	٣
4	Four	أَرْبَعَةٌ	٤
5	Five	خَمْسَةٌ	٥
6	Six	سِتَّةٌ	٦
7	Seven	سَبْعَةٌ	٧
8	Eight	ثَمَانِيَةٌ	٨
9	Nine	تِسْعَةٌ	٩
10	Ten	عَشَرَةٌ	١٠
11	Eleven	أَحَدَ عَشَرَ	١١
12	Twelve	اِثْنَا عَشَرَ	١٢
13	Thirteen	ثَلَاثَة عَشَرَ	١٣
14	Fourteen	أَرْبَعَةَ عَشَرَ	١٤

15	Fifteen	خَمْسَةَ عَشَرَ	١٥
16	Sixteen	سِتَّةَ عَشَرَ	١٦
17	Seventeen	سَبْعَةَ عَشَرَ	١٧
18	Eighteen	ثَمَانِيَةَ عَشَرَ	١٨
19	Nineteen	تِسْعَةَ عَشَرَ	١٩
20	Twenty	عِشْرُوْنَ	٢٠
21	Twenty-One	وَاحِدٌ وَ عِشْرُوْنَ	٢١
22	Twenty-Two	اِثْنَانِ وَ عِشْرُوْنَ	٢٢
23	Twenty-Three	ثَلاَثَةٌ وَ عِشْرُوْنَ	٢٣
24	Twenty-Four	أَرْبَعَةٌ وَ عِشْرُوْنَ	٢٤
25	Twenty-Five	خَمْسَةٌ وَ عِشْرُوْنَ	٢٥
26	Twenty-Six	سِتَّةٌ وَ عِشْرُوْنَ	٢٦
27	Twenty-Seven	سَبْعَةٌ وَ عِشْرُوْنَ	٢٧
28	Twenty-Eight	ثَمَانِيَةٌ وَ عِشْرُوْنَ	٢٨
29	Twenty-Nine	تِسْعَةٌ وَ عِشْرُوْنَ	٢٩
30	Thirty	ثَلَاثُوْنَ	٣٠

40	Forty	أَرْبَعُوْنَ	٤٠
50	Fifty	خَمْسُوْنَ	٥٠
60	Sixty	سِتُّوْنَ	٦٠
70	Seventy	سَبْعُوْنَ	٧٠
80	Eighty	ثَمَانُوْنَ	٨٠
90	Ninety	تِسْعُوْنَ	٩٠
100	Hundred	مِائَةٌ	١٠٠
1000	One Thousand	أَلْفٌ	١٠٠٠
100,000	One Hundred Thousand	مِائَةُ أَلْفٍ	١٠٠٠٠٠
1,000,000	One Million	مِلْيُوْنٌ	١٠٠٠٠٠٠

Food - طَعَامٌ

English	Singular	Plural
Breakfast	فَطُوْرٌ	---
Lunch	غَدَاءٌ	---
Dinner	عَشَاءٌ	---
Chicken	دَجَاجٌ	دُجُجٌ
Meat	لَحْمٌ	لُحُوْمٌ
Salad	سَلْطَةٌ	سَلْطَاتٌ
Bread	خُبْزٌ	---
Rice	أَرُزٌّ	---
Fish	سَمَكٌ	أَسْمَاكٌ
Egg	بَيْضَةٌ	بُيُوْضٌ / بَيْضَاتٌ
Flour	دَقِيْقٌ	دَقَائِقُ / أَدِقَّةٌ
Honey	عَسَلٌ	أَعْسَالٌ / عُسُوْلٌ
Butter	زُبْدَةٌ	زُبْدَاتٌ
Cheese	جُبْنٌ	أَجْبَانٌ
Sugar	سُكَّرٌ	---
Salt	مِلْحٌ	---

Pepper	فُلْفُلٌ	---
Vinegar	خَلٌّ	---
Cake	كَعْكَةٌ	كَعْكَاتٌ
Wheat	قَمْحٌ	أَقْمَاحٌ
Oil	زَيْتٌ	زُيُوْتٌ
Sauce	صَلْصَةٌ	صَلْصَاتٌ
Broth	مَرَقٌ	مَرَقَاتٌ
Spice	تَابِلٌ	تَوَابِلُ
Semolina	سَمِيْدٌ	---
Barley	شَعِيْرٌ	---

Drinks - مَشْرُوْبَاتٌ

English	Singular	Plural
Water	مَاءٌ	مِيَاهٌ
Milk	لَبَنٌ	أَلْبَانٌ
Juice	عَصِيْرٌ	عَصَائِرُ
Coffee	قَهْوَةٌ	قَهْوَاتٌ
Tea	شَايٌ	---
Hot drinks	اَلْمَشْرُوْبُ السَّاخِنُ	اَلْمَشْرُوْبَاتُ السَّاخِنَةُ
Cold drinks	اَلْمَشْرُوْبُ الْبَارِدُ	اَلْمَشْرُوْبَاتُ الْبَارِدَةُ
Green tea	شَايٌ أَخْضَرُ	---
Lemon juice	عَصِيْرُ لَيْمُوْنٍ	---
Orange juice	عَصِيْرُ بُرْتُقَالٍ	---
Apple juice	عَصِيْرُ تُفَّاحٍ	---

Fruits - فَوَاكِهُ

English	Singular	Plural
Apple	تُفَّاحَةٌ	تُفَّاحَاتٌ
Banana	مَوْزٌ	---
Orange	بُرْتُقَالٌ	---
Grape	عِنَبٌ	أَعْنَابٌ
Fig	تِيْنٌ	---
Mango	مَانْجُوْ / اَنْبَجٌ	
Lemon	لَيْمُوْنٌ	---
Apricot	مِشْمَشٌ	---
Peach	خُوْخٌ	خَوْخَةٌ
Pineapple	أَنَانَاسٌ	---
Cherry	كَرَزٌ	أَكْرَازٌ
Pear	إِجَّاصَةٌ	إِجَّاصَاتٌ
Watermelon	بَطِّيْخٌ	---
Coconut	جَوْزُ الْهِنْدِ	---
Pomegranate	رُمَّانٌ	---
Plum	بَرْمُوْقٌ	---

Vegetables - خَضْرَاوَاتٌ

English	Singular	Plural
Carrot	جَزَرٌ	---
Tomato	طَمَاطِمُ	---
Cucumber	خِيَارٌ	---
Onion	بَصَلٌ	بَصَلَةٌ
Potato	بَطَاطَا/بَطَاطَسْ	بِطَطٌ
Eggplant	بَاذِنْجَانُ	---
Cabbage	كُرُنْبٌ	---
Cauliflower	قَرْنَبِيْطٌ	---
Lettuce	خَسٌّ	---
Mushroom	فُطْرٌ	---
Turnip	لِفْتٌ	---
Spinach	سَبَانِخٌ	---
Coriander	كُزْبُرَةٌ	---
Mint	نَعْنَاعٌ	---
Taro	قُلْقَاسٌ	---
Ginger	زَنْجَبِيْلٌ	---
Radish	فِجْلٌ	فُجُوْلٌ

The Kitchen – اَلْمَطْبَخُ

English	Singular	Plural
Kitchen	مَطْبَخٌ	مَطَابِخُ
Towel	فُوْطَةٌ	فُوَطٌ
Fork	شَوْكَةٌ	شَوْكٌ
Oven	فُرْنٌ	أَفْرَانٌ
Spoon	مِلْعَقَةٌ	مَلَاعِقُ
Pot	قِدْرٌ	قُدُوْرٌ
Coffee kettle	غَلَّايَةُ قَهْوَةٍ	غَلَّايَاتُ قَهْوَةٍ
Coffee cup	فِنْجَانُ قَهْوَةٍ	فَنَاجِيْنُ قَهْوَةٍ
Saltshaker	مِمْلَحَةٌ	مَمَالِحُ
Kitchen cabinet	دُوْلَابُ مَطْبَخٍ	دَوَالِيْبُ مَطْبَخٍ
Jug	إِبْرِيْقٌ	أَبَارِيْقُ
Crusher	كَسَّارَةٌ	كَسَّارَاتٌ
Matches	كِبْرِيْتٌ	كِبْرِيْتَاتٌ / أَعْوَادُ كِبْرِيْتٍ
Mincer	فَرَّامَةٌ	فَرَّامَاتٌ
Dough board	لَوْحَةُ الْعَجِيْنِ	لَوْحَاتُ الْعَجِيْنِ
Tongs	مِلْقَطٌ	مَلَاقِطُ

English	Singular	Plural
Tray	صِيْنِيَّةٌ	صَوَانِيْ
Frying pan	مِقْلَاةٌ	مَقَالٍ
Plate	صَحْنٌ	صُحُوْنٌ
Knife	سِكِّيْنٌ	سَكَاكِيْنُ
Teapot	إِبْرِيْقُ شَايٍ	أَبَارِيْقُ شَايٍ
Teacup	فِنْجَانُ شَايٍ	فَنَاجِيْنُ شَايٍ
Cup	كُوْبٌ	أَكْوَابٌ
Strainer	مِصْفَاةٌ	مَصَافٍ
Kettle	غَلَّايَةٌ	غَلَّايَاتٌ
Rolling pin	مِرْقَاقُ الْعَجِيْنِ	مَرَاقِيْقُ الْعَجِيْنِ
Clay oven/Tandoor	تَنُّوْرٌ	تَنَانِيْرُ
Grill	مِشْوَاةٌ	مَشَاوِيْ
Shelf	رَفٌّ	رُفُوْفٌ
Can opener	فَتَّاحَةُ عُلَبٍ	فَتَّاحَاتُ عُلَبٍ
Sponge	إِسْفِنْجَةٌ	إِسْفِنْجَاتٌ
Dish rack	مِسْتَنٌّ	مَسَاتِنُ
Sink	حَوْضٌ	أَحْوَاضٌ
Ladle	مِغْرَفَةٌ	مَغَارِفُ

The Mosque - اَلْمَسْجِدُ

English	Singular	Plural
Microphone	مِيكْرُوْفُوْنٌ	مِيكْرُوْفُوْنَاتٌ
Prayer Mat	سَجَّادَةٌ	سَجَّادَاتٌ
Row	صَفٌّ	صُفُوْفٌ
Miḥrāb	مِحْرَابٌ	مَحَارِيْبُ
Qurʾān Cover	غِلَافُ الْقُرْاٰنِ	أَغْلِفَةُ الْقُرْاٰنِ
Qurʾān Holder / Stand	حَامِلُ الْمُصْحَفِ	حَمَلَةُ الْمَصَاحِفِ
Book of Ḥadīth	كِتَابُ الْحَدِيْثِ	كُتُبُ الْحَدِيْثِ
Religious Book	كِتَابٌ دِيْنِيٌّ	كُتُبٌ دِيْنِيَّةٌ
Imam (Prayer leader)	إِمَامٌ	أَئِمَّةٌ
Worshipper	مُصَلٍّ	مُصَلُّوْنَ
Congregation	جَمَاعَةٌ	جَمَاعَاتٌ
Sermon	خُطْبَةٌ	خُطَبٌ
Carpet	فَرْشٌ	فُرُوْشٌ
Direction of Prayer	قِبْلَةٌ	-
Light	إِضَاءَةٌ / مِصْبَاحٌ	أَضْوَاءُ / مَصَابِيْحُ
Ablution Area	مَكَانُ الْوُضُوْءِ	أَمَاكِنُ الْوُضُوْءِ
Pulpit	مِنْبَرٌ	مَنَابِرُ

Professions - مِهَنٌ

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
Doctor	طَبِيْبٌ	Builder	بَنَّاءٌ
Engineer	مُهَنْدِسٌ	Carpenter	نَجَّارٌ
Teacher	مُعَلِّمٌ	Electrician	كَهْرَبَائِيٌّ
Lawyer	مُحَامٍ	Plumber	سَبَّاكٌ
Policeman	شُرْطِيٌّ	Judge	قَاضٍ
Employee	مُوَظَّفٌ	Imam	إِمَامٌ
Pilot	طَيَّارٌ	Merchant	تَاجِرٌ
Cook / Chef	طَبَّاخٌ	Accountant	مُحَاسِبٌ
Waiter	نَادِلٌ	Principal	مُدِيْرٌ
Farmer	فَلَّاحٌ	Writer/Author	كَاتِبٌ
Driver	سَائِقٌ	Poet	شَاعِرٌ
Tailor	خَيَّاطٌ	Translator	مُتَرْجِمٌ
Butcher	جَزَّارٌ	Scientist	عَالِمٌ
Barber	حَلَّاقٌ	Researcher	بَاحِثٌ
Painter/Artist	رَسَّامٌ	Inventor	مُخْتَرِعٌ
Photographer	مُصَوِّرٌ	Athlete	رِيَاضِيٌّ

Mechanic	مِيْكَانِيْكِيٌّ	Mechanical Engineer	مُهَنْدِسُ مِيْكَانِيْكَا
Carpenter	نَجَّارٌ	Designer	مُصَمِّمٌ
Cleaner	مُنَظِّفٌ	Journalist	صَحَفِيٌّ
Dentist	طَبِيْبُ أَسْنَانٍ	Caretaker	مُرَبِّيْ
Nurse (male)	مُمَرِّضٌ	Baker	خَبَّازٌ
Nurse (female)	مُمَرِّضَةٌ	Guard	حَارِسٌ
Pharmacist	صَيْدَلِيٌّ	Warden	سَجَّانٌ
Therapist	مُعَالِجٌ	Salesman	بَائِعٌ
Psychologist	أَخِصَّائِيٌّ نَفْسِيٌّ	Investor	مُسْتَثْمِرٌ
Programmer	مُبَرْمِجٌ	Photographer	مُصَوِّرٌ
Web Designer	مُصَمِّمُ وِيْبٍ	Blogger	مُدَوِّنٌ
Civil Engineer	مُهَنْدِسُ بِنَاءٍ	Electrical Engineer	مُهَنْدِسُ كَهرَبَاءٍ

Family - أُسْرَةٌ

English	Singular	Plural
Father	أَبٌ	اٰبَاءُ
Mother	أُمٌّ	أُمَّهَاتٌ
Son	اِبْنٌ	أَبْنَاءُ
Daughter	بِنْتٌ	بَنَاتٌ
Brother	أَخٌ	إِخْوَةٌ
Sister	أُخْتٌ	أَخَوَاتٌ
Grandfather	جَدٌّ	أَجْدَادٌ
Grandmother	جَدَّةٌ	جَدَّاتٌ
Paternal uncle	عَمٌّ	أَعْمَامٌ
Paternal aunt	عَمَّةٌ	عَمَّاتٌ
Maternal uncle	خَالٌ	أَخْوَالٌ
Maternal aunt	خَالَةٌ	خَالَاتٌ
Husband	زَوْجٌ	أَزْوَاجٌ
Wife	زَوْجَةٌ	زَوْجَاتٌ
Father-in-law	حَمٌ	أَحْمَاءُ
Mother-in-law	حَمَاةٌ	حَمَوَاتٌ

Body Parts - أَعْضَاءُ الْجِسْمِ

English	Singular	Plural
Head	رَأْسٌ	رُءُوْسٌ
Eye	عَيْنٌ	عُيُوْنٌ
Ear	أُذُنٌ	اٰذَانٌ
Nose	أَنْفٌ	أُنُوْفٌ
Mouth	فَمٌ	أَفْوَاهٌ
Tooth	سِنٌّ	أَسْنَانٌ
Tongue	لِسَانٌ	أَلْسِنَةٌ
Lip	شَفَةٌ	شِفَاهٌ
Face	وَجْهٌ	وُجُوْهٌ
Hair	شَعْرٌ	شُعُوْرٌ
Neck	رَقَبَةٌ	رِقَابٌ
Shoulder	كَتِفٌ	أَكْتَافٌ
Hand	يَدٌ	أَيْدٍ
Arm	ذِرَاعٌ	أَذْرُعٌ
Elbow	كُوْعٌ	أَكْوَاعٌ
Finger	إِصْبَعٌ	أَصَابِعُ

English	Singular	Plural
Nail	ظُفْرٌ	أَظْفَارٌ
Palm	كَفٌّ	أَكُفٌّ / كُفُوْفٌ
Chest	صَدْرٌ	صُدُوْرٌ
Stomach	بَطْنٌ	بُطُوْنٌ
Back	ظَهْرٌ	ظُهُوْرٌ
Leg	سَاقٌ	سُوْقٌ/سِيْقَانٌ
Knee	رُكْبَةٌ	رُكَبٌ
Foot	قَدَمٌ	أَقْدَامٌ
Ankle	كَعْبٌ	كُعُوْبٌ
Muscle	عَضَلَةٌ	عَضَلَاتٌ
Heart	قَلْبٌ	قُلُوْبٌ
Lung	رِئَةٌ	رِئَاتٌ
Brain	دِمَاغٌ	أَدْمِغَةٌ
Skin	جِلْدٌ	جُلُوْدٌ
Bone	عَظْمٌ	عِظَامٌ
Thigh	فَخِذٌ	أَفْخَاذٌ

Adjectives - صِفَاتٌ

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
Big	كَبِيْرٌ	Dirty	وَسِخٌ
Small	صَغِيْرٌ	Strong	قَوِيٌّ
Good	جَيِّدٌ	Weak	ضَعِيْفٌ
Bad	سَيِّئٌ	Happy	سَعِيْدٌ
Beautiful	جَمِيْلٌ	Sad	حَزِيْنٌ
Ugly	قَبِيْحٌ	Fast	سَرِيْعٌ
Hot	حَارٌّ	Slow	بَطِيْءٌ
Cold	بَارِدٌ	Rich	غَنِيٌّ
New	جَدِيْدٌ	Poor	فَقِيْرٌ
Old	قَدِيْمٌ	Near	قَرِيْبٌ
Long	طَوِيْلٌ	Far	بَعِيْدٌ
Short	قَصِيْرٌ	Thin	نَحِيْفٌ
Easy	سَهْلٌ	Fat	سَمِيْنٌ
Difficult	صَعْبٌ	Right / Correct	صَحِيْحٌ
Clean	نَظِيْفٌ	Wrong / Incorrect	خَطَأٌ

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
Soft	لَيِّنٌ	Deep	عَمِيْقٌ
Hard	صُلْبٌ	Shallow	ضَحْلٌ
Cheap	رَخِيْصٌ	Sweet	حُلْوٌ
Expensive	غَالٍ	Bitter	مُرٌّ
Many/Much	كَثِيْرٌ	Fresh	طَازَجٌ
Little (of)	قَلِيْلٌ	Delicious	لَذِيْذٌ
Heavy	ثَقِيْلٌ	Open	مَفْتُوْحٌ
Light	خَفِيْفٌ	Closed	مُغْلَقٌ
Smart	ذَكِيٌّ	Wet	مُبَلَّلٌ
Unintelligent	غَبِيٌّ	Dry	جَافٌّ
Hardworking	مُجْتَهِدٌ	Rough	خَشِنٌ
Lazy	كَسْلَانٌ	Smooth	ناعِمٌ
Wide	وَاسِعٌ	Similar	مُشابِهٌ
Narrow	ضَيِّقٌ	Different	مُخْتَلِفٌ
Useful	مُفِيْدٌ	Moderate	مُعْتَدِلٌ

Verbs - أَفْعَالٌ

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
To hit	ضَرَبَ	To say	قَالَ
To open	فَتَحَ	To sell	بَاعَ
To sit	جَلَسَ	To fast	صَامَ
To go	ذَهَبَ	To visit	زَارَ
To write	كَتَبَ	To fear	خَافَ
To exit	خَرَجَ	To walk	مَشٰى
To enter	دَخَلَ	To throw	رَمٰى
To help	نَصَرَ	To cry	بَكٰى
To play	لَعِبَ	To strive	سَعٰى
To hear	سَمِعَ	To call/invite	دَعَا
To wash	غَسَلَ	To be saved	نَجَا
To read	قَرَأَ	To stand	وَقَفَ
To understand	فَهِمَ	To promise	وَعَدَ
To memorise	حَفِظَ	To find	وَجَدَ
To break	كَسَرَ	To fold	طَوٰى

To eat	أَكَلَ	To fulfil	وَفٰى
To sleep	نَامَ	To despair	يَئِسَ
To cut	قَطَعَ	To steal	سَرَقَ
To return	رَجَعَ	To run	جَرٰى
To ride	رَكِبَ	To cross	عَبَرَ
To drink	شَرِبَ	To shout	صَرَخَ
To laugh	ضَحِكَ	To open wide	شَقَّ
To understand	عَقَلَ	To reject	رَفَضَ
To carry	حَمَلَ	To separate	فَصَلَ
To do/make	فَعَلَ	To cook	طَبَخَ
To ask	سَأَلَ	To win	فَازَ
To leave	تَرَكَ	To begin/start	بَدَأَ
To stretch	مَدَّ	To meet	لَقِيَ
To live	سَكَنَ	To forget	نَسِيَ
To look at	نَظَرَ	To burn	حَرَقَ
To defeat	غَلَبَ	To fall	سَقَطَ
To forgive	غَفَرَ	To whisper	هَمَسَ
To kill	قَتَلَ	To live	عَاشَ

Exercise 1 – Lesson 3

Complete the table below. If a definite noun is given, change it to its indefinite form. If an indefinite noun is given, change it to its definite form.

Definite	Indefinite
	بَيْتٌ
اَلْكِتَابُ	
	قَلَمٌ
اَلْمَسْجِدُ	
	طَبِيْبٌ
اَلسَّيَّارَةُ	
	طَاوِلَةٌ
اَلْمَدْرَسَةُ	
	مُهَنْدِسٌ
اَلْكُرْسِيُّ	
	جِدَارٌ
اَلْوَلَدُ	

Exercise 2 – Lesson 8

1. Identify the gender of the following nouns.

Noun	Translation	Gender (Masculine or Feminine)
بَيْتٌ	House	
فَاطِمَةُ	Fāṭimah	
بِنْتٌ	Girl	
وَلَدٌ	Boy	
سَيَّارَةٌ	Car	
قَلَمٌ	Pen	
زَيْنَبُ	Zainab	
فَرَاوِلَةٌ	Strawberry	
كِتَابٌ	Book	
طَلْحَةٌ	Ṭalḥah	
سَوْدَاءُ	Black	
مُعَلِّمٌ	Teacher	
مُعَلِّمَةٌ	Teacher	
دِمَشْقُ	Damascus	
عَيْنٌ	Eye	
مُهَنْدِسٌ	Engineer	
جِدَارٌ	Wall	

2. Identify the reason why each word in the table is classified as feminine by selecting the proper answer from the box below.

Tāʾ Marbūṭah	*Alif Maqṣūrah*	*Alif Mamdūdah*	Female Names
Female Titles	Paired Body Part	City or Country	*Muʾannath Samāʿī*

Feminine noun	Meaning	Reason
سَيَّارَةٌ	Car	*Tāʾ Marbūṭah*
سِدْنِي	Sydney	
صَحْرَاءُ	Desert	
مرْيَمُ	Maryam	
كُبْرٰى	Greater	
أُمٌّ	Mother	
شَمْسٌ	Sun	
عَيْنٌ	Eye	
جَدَّةٌ	Grandmother	
فَرَاوِلَةٌ	Strawberry	
صَفْرَاءُ	Yellow	
صُغْرٰى	Smaller	
أَسْمَاءٌ	Names	
مَدِيْنَةٌ	City	
بَقَرَةٌ	Cow	

Exercise 3 – Lesson 9

Fill in the table by writing each noun in its three case forms.

مَجْرُوْر	مَنْصُوْب	مَرْفُوْع
مُؤْمِنَةٍ	مُؤْمِنَةً	مُؤْمِنَةٌ
		اَلْبِنْتُ
	رَجُلًا	
تُفَّاحَةٍ		
		كِتَابٌ
	سَيَّارَةً	
مَسْجِدٍ		
		اَلْمَدْرَسَةُ
	بِنْتًا	
جِدَارٍ		
		قَلَمٌ
	فَرَاوِلَةً	

Exercise 4 – Lesson 10

Fill in the table by converting the singular nouns into their dual, masculine and feminine forms.

Dual				Singular
Feminine مَنْصُوْب/مَجْرُوْر	**Masculine** مَنْصُوْب/مَجْرُوْر	**Feminine** مَرْفُوْع	**Masculine** مَرْفُوْع	
مَاهِرَتَيْنِ	مَاهِرَيْنَ	مَاهِرَتَانِ	مَاهِرَانِ	مَاهِرٌ Skilled
				مُسْلِمٌ Muslim
				مُجْتَهِدٌ Hardworking
				عَامِلٌ Worker
				لَاعِبٌ Player
				مُعَلِّمٌ Teacher
				خَبَّازٌ Baker
				كَاتِبٌ Writer

Exercise 5 – Lesson 11

Fill in the table by converting the singular nouns into their plural, masculine and feminine forms.

Plural				Singular
Feminine مَنْصُوْب/مَجْرُوْر	**Masculine** مَنْصُوْب/مَجْرُوْر	**Feminine** مَرْفُوْع	**Masculine** مَرْفُوْع	
خَادِمَاتٍ	خَادِمِيْنَ	خَادِمَاتٌ	خَادِمُوْنَ	خَادِمٌ Servant
				صَادِقٌ Truthful
				مُؤْمِنٌ Believer
				مُسَافِرٌ Traveller
				حَافِظٌ Protector
				صَالِحٌ Righteous
				فَلَّاحٌ Farmer
				زَائِرٌ Visitor

Exercise 6 – Lesson 14

1. Below is a descriptive passage of a house written entirely with nominal sentences. Read it carefully and observe how the مُبْتَدَأ and خَبَر appear in their proper grammatical cases, and how they agree in gender and number. Then, using the vocabulary provided, translate the passage into English on the next page.

اَلْبَيْتُ جَمِيْلٌ

اَلْبَيْتُ جَمِيْلٌ وَ الْبَابَانِ جَدِيْدَانِ وَ الشَّبَابِيْكُ نَظِيْفَةٌ. اَلْغُرَفُ وَاسِعَةٌ و الْخِزَانَتَانِ قَدِيْمَتَانِ وَالْمُكَيِّفُ جَدِيْدٌ وَ الْمِرْوَحَةُ مُغْبِرَةٌ. اَلْمَطْبَخُ فَاخِرٌ وَ الْأَوْعِيَةُ كَثِيْرَةٌ وَ الثَّلَّاجَةُ بَارِدَةٌ و الْمَوْقِدَانِ سَاخِنَانِ. اَلسَّقْفُ مُرْتَفِعٌ وَ السُّلَّمُ رُخَامِيٌّ وَ الْإِضَاءَةُ مُشْرِقَةٌ.

Arabic	English	Arabic	English	Arabic	English
وَ	And	قَدِيْمَتَانِ	Old	بَارِدَةٌ	Cold
اَلْبَيْتُ	The house	اَلْمُكَيِّفُ	Air conditioner	اَلْمَوْقِدَانِ	The two ovens
جَمِيْلٌ	Beautiful	جَدِيْدٌ	New	سَاخِنَانِ	Hot
اَلْبَابَانِ	The two doors	اَلْمِرْوَحَةُ	The fan	اَلسَّقْفُ	The roof
جَدِيْدَانِ	New	مُغْبِرَةٌ	Dusty	مُرْتَفِعٌ	high
اَلشَّبَابِيْكُ	The windows	اَلْمَطْبَخُ	The kitchen	اَلسُّلَّمُ	The stairs
نَظِيْفَةٌ	Clean	فَاخِرٌ	Luxurious	رُخَامِيٌّ	Marbly
اَلْغُرَفُ	The rooms	اَلْأَوْعِيَةُ	The utensils	اَلْإِضَاءَةُ	The lighting
وَاسِعَةٌ	Spacious	كَثِيْرَةٌ	Many	مُشْرِقَةٌ	Bright
اَلْخِزَانَتَانِ	The two cabinets	اَلثَّلَّاجَةُ	The fridge		

Exercise 6 – Lesson 14 (continued)

2. Find the errors in the following sentences and correct them in the column on the left.

	اَلْمِرْوَحَتَانِ مُغْبِرَةٌ The two fans are dirty
	اَلْبِنْتَانِ مُجْتَهِدَانِ The two girls are hardworking
	اَلرَّجُلُ طَوِيْلَةٌ The man is tall
	اَلْمَسَاجِدُ جَمِيْلٌ The mosques are beautiful
	اَلْأَطِبَّاءُ مَاهِرٌ The doctors (m) are skilled

Exercise 7 – Lesson 15

Translate the following Arabic Pronouns to English. Make sure to identify the gender of the pronouns. Follow the example given.

English	Arabic
Them 2 (Masculine or Feminine)	هُمَا
	هُوَ
	هِيَ
	أَنْتَ
	أَنْتِ
	أَنْتُمْ
	هُنَّ
	هُمْ
	نَحْنُ
	أَنَا
	أَنْتُنَّ
	أَنْتُمَا

Exercise 8 – Lesson 17

1. Add an appropriate صِفَة for the words below using the adjectives in the box provided then translate your sentence to English. Ensure to change the صِفَة based on the rules you have learnt. Follow the given example.

رَخِيْصٌ	كَبِيْرٌ	مُمَزَّقٌ	صَغِيْرٌ	مُجْتَهِدٌ
Cheap	Big/Large	Torn	Small	Hardworking
نَاضِجٌ	مُفِيْدٌ	طَاهِرٌ	تَقِيٌّ	مَاهِرٌ
Ripe	Beneficial	Pure/Clean	Pious	Skilled

1	اَلْوَلَدَ الْمُجْتَهِدَ (The boy)	The hardworking boy
2	اَلْبِنْتُ _____ (The girl)	
3	مَاءٌ _____ (Water)	
4	اَلثَّوْبِ _____ (The clothes)	
5	قَلَمَانِ _____ (Two pens)	
6	سُوْقٌ _____ (Market)	
7	إِمَامٍ _____ (Imam)	
8	فَاكِهَةٌ _____ (Fruit)	
9	طَبِيْبَتَيْنِ _____ (Two Doctors)	
10	اَلْكُتُبُ _____ (The books)	

2. Change the following adjectives to the various forms given. The first one has been done for you.

Plural Masculine مَرْفُوْع	Dual Feminine مَجْرُوْر	Singular Masculine Definite مَرْفُوْع	Singular Feminine مَنْصُوْب	Dual Masculine مَرْفُوْع	Adjective
نَظِيْفُوْنَ	نَظِيْفَتَيْنِ	اَلنَّظِيْفُ	نَظِيْفَةً	نَظِيْفَانِ	نَظِيْفٌ
					سَرِيْعٌ
					بَارِدٌ
					جَمِيْلٌ
					قَصِيْرٌ
					لَذِيْذٌ
					سَعِيْدٌ
					صَغِيْرٌ
					نَشِيْطٌ

Exercise 9 – Lesson 18

1. Correct the mistakes in the *iḍāfah* phrases below.

Correct	Incorrect
	اَلْكِتَابُ الْمُعَلِّمِ The teacher's book
	بَيْتٌ الْوَلَدِ The boy's house
	قَلَمٌ زَيْدٌ Zayd's pen
	سَاعَةُ الْبِنْتُ The girl's watch
	مِفْتَاحُ بَابُ الْبَيْتِ The key of the door of the house
	كِتَابٌ مَكْتَبِ الْجَامِعَةِ The book of the university's library
	قَلَمُ الطَّالِبِ جَدِيْدًا The student's pen is new
	كُتُبُ الْمُدَرِّسُ مُفِيْدٌ The teacher's books are beneficial
	قَلَمَانِ الطَّالِبِ مَكْسُوْرَيْنِ The two pens of the student are broken
	مُسْلِمُوْنَ الْبَلَدِ مُتَّحِدَاتٌ The Muslims of the country are united

2. Translate the following *iḍāfah* phrases into Arabic using the vocabulary provided below.

كِتَابٌ Book	طَالِبٌ Student	بَابٌ Door	مَسْجِدٌ Mosque	بَيْتٌ House	رَجُلٌ Man
حَقِيْبَةٌ Bag	بِنْتٌ Girl	طَعَامٌ Food	وَلَدٌ Boy	مِفْتَاحٌ Key	مَدْرَسَةٌ School
نَافِذَةٌ Window	غُرْفَةٌ Room	قَلَمٌ Pen	مُعَلِّمٌ Teacher	سَاعَةٌ Watch	أُمٌّ Mother
قِصَّةٌ Story	نَبِيٌّ Prophet	لَوْنٌ Colour	سَجَّادَةٌ Carpet	مَسْجِدٌ Mosque	بَوَّابَةٌ Gate
قَصْرٌ Castle	مَلِكٌ King	سَيَّارَةٌ Car	صَدِيْقٌ Friend	اِبْنٌ Son	وَلِيْدٌ Walīd

The book of the student	
The door of the mosque	
The house of the man	
The bag of the girl	
The food of the boy	
The key of the school	
The window of the room	
The teacher’s pen	
The colour of the carpet of the Mosque	
The gate of the castle of the King	
The car of the friend of the son of Walīd	

Exercise 10 – Lesson 19

1. Correct the Arabic sentences below so that they match the English meaning.

Correct	Incorrect
	كُلُّ الطُّلَّابِ مُجْتَهِدُوْنَ All the students are hardworking
	كُلُّ كِتَابٍ مُفِيْدٌ The whole book is beneficial
	بَعْضٌ الْمُعَلِّمِيْنَ غَائِبُوْنَ Some of the teachers are absent
	كُلُّ سَيَّارَةٍ سَرِيْعٌ Each car is fast
	بَعْضُ مَقَالَةٍ مُفِيْدَةٌ Some of the article is beneficial

2. Translate the following sentences into English. Use the vocabulary provided below.

أَقْلَامٌ Pens	جَدِيْدٌ New	بُيُوْتٌ Houses	جَمِيْلٌ Beautiful	بِنْتٌ Girl
مُجْتَهِدٌ Hardworking	طَعَامٌ Food	بَارِدٌ Cold	أَوْلَادٌ Boys	مُسْلِمُوْنَ Muslims

	كُلُّ الْأَقْلَامِ جَدِيْدَةٌ
	بَعْضُ الْبُيُوتِ جَمِيْلَةٌ
	كُلُّ بِنْتٍ مُجْتَهِدَةٌ
	بَعْضُ الطَّعَامِ بَارِدٌ
	كُلُّ الْأَوْلَادِ مُسْلِمُوْنَ

Exercise 11 – Lesson 20

Use the correct pronoun from the box below and translate the English sentences into Arabic. Follow the first example.

كَ	هُنَّ	هَا	هُمْ	هُمَا	هُ
نَا	يْ	كُنَّ	كِ	كُمْ	كُمَا

Noun	English	Arabic
كِتَابٌ	His book	كِتَابُهُ
سَيَّارَةٌ	Her car	
غُرْفَةٌ	Our room	
حَقِيْبَةٌ	Your (singular/masculine) bag	
قَلَمٌ	Their (dual/feminine) pen	
كُرَّاسَةٌ	My exercise book	
مِفْتَاحٌ	Their (dual/masculine) key	
حَدِيْقَةٌ	Your (dual/feminine) garden	
كُرْسِيٌّ	Their (plural/masculine) chair	
مِعْطَفٌ	Your (singular/feminine) coat	
جُيُوْبٌ	Your (dual/masculine) pockets	
نَظَّارَاتٌ	Their (plural/feminine) glasses	

Exercise 12 – Lesson 21

Fill in the blank with the correct preposition (حَرْفُ جَرّ).

وَ	كَ	لِ	عَلٰى	فِيْ
بِ	عَنْ	حَتّٰى	إِلٰى	مِنْ

اَلْكِتَابُ ____ الْحَقِيْبَةِ
اَلْقَلَمُ ____ الطَّالِبِ
اَلدَّفْتَرُ ____ الطَّاوِلَةِ
زَيْدٌ ____ الْأَسَدِ
____اللّٰهِ اَلْمُعَلِّمُ فِي الْفَصْلِ
اَلطَّعَامُ ____ السُّوْقِ
اَلدَّعْوَةُ ____ الْحَقِّ
اَلسَّفَرُ ____ الْمَدِيْنَةِ
اَلْكِتَابُ ____ التَّارِيْخِ
اَلْكَلَامُ ____ الْحِكْمَةِ

دَفْتَرٌ Notebook	طَالِبٌ Student	قَلَمٌ Pen	حَقِيْبَةٌ Bag	كِتَابٌ Book
طَعَامٌ Food	فَصْلٌ Classroom	مُعَلِّمٌ Teacher	أَسَدٌ Lion	طَاوِلَةٌ Table
مَدِيْنَةٌ City	سَفَرٌ Travel	حَقٌّ Truth	دَعْوَةٌ Call/*Da'wah*	سُوْقٌ Market
		حِكْمَةٌ Wisdom	كَلَامٌ Speech/Talk	تَارِيْخٌ History

Exercise 13 – Lesson 22

Translate the following sentences into Arabic using the vocabulary provided below. Review Lesson 22 if you need a reminder about the demonstrative pronouns.

نَافِذَةٌ Window	بَابٌ Door	حَدِيْقَةٌ Garden	غُرْفَةٌ Room	طَالِبٌ Student-M	طَالِبَةٌ Student-F
مُعَلِّمٌ Teacher	كِتَابٌ Book	مَكْتَبٌ Desk	بَيْتٌ House	مَدِيْنَةٌ City	طِفْلٌ Child
أَوْلَادٌ Children	عَمٌّ Uncle	ظِلٌّ Shadow	شَجَرَةٌ Tree	كَبِيْرٌ Big	

That is a window	
Those are doors	
This is a garden	
Those are two rooms	
These are students (m)	
Those are students (f)	
Those are the teacher’s books	
This is the student’s desk	
This house is in the city	
These are the children of the uncle	
That is the shadow of the big tree	

Exercise 14 – Lesson 23

1. Complete the sentences with the correct relative pronoun from the box.

اَلَّذِيْ	اَلَّتِيْ	اَلَّذَانِ	اَلَّتَانِ	اَلَّذِيْنَ
اَلَّاتِيْ	اَلَّۤئِيْ	مَا	مَنْ	أَيٌّ

اَلْكِتَابُ _____ عَلَى الْمَكْتَبِ جَدِيْدٌ
اَلْبِنْتَانِ _____ فِي الْمَدْرَسَةِ نَشِيْطَتَانِ
اَلْمُسْلِمَاتُ _____ فِي الْبَيْتِ مُؤْمِنَاتٌ
_____ فِي الْمَسْجِدِ إِمَامٌ
اَلْمُعَلِّمَاتُ _____ فِي الْمَدْرَسَةِ جَدِيْدَاتٌ
اَلْمَرْأَةُ _____ فِي الْمَسْجِدِ مُسْلِمَةٌ
_____ الْفَرِيْقَيْنِ خَيْرٌ
اَلطُّلَّابُ _____ فِي الْفَصْلِ نَشِيْطُوْنَ
_____ فِي الْحَقِيْبَةِ مُفِيْدٌ
اَلْوَلَدَانِ _____ فِي الْجَامِعَةِ مُجْتَهِدَانِ

مَرْأَةٌ Woman	وَلَدٌ Boy	حَدِيْقَةٌ Garden	حَقِيْبَةٌ Bag
فَرِيْقٌ Group	مُفِيْدٌ Beneficial	جَدِيْدٌ New	مَكْتَبٌ Desk
جَامِعَةٌ University	نَشِيْطٌ Active	خَيْرٌ Better/best	

2. Translate the ten sentences from the previous page into English.

Exercise 15 – Lesson 25

1. Below you will find a set of answers in the second table. Choose the appropriate question from the first table and write it in the correct column of the second table so that the answer matches the question.

   Note: Use a dictionary for any words you are unsure of. Make sure to look up the singular form if the word is dual or plural.

مَنْ فِي الْغُرْفَةِ؟	أَيْنَ بَيْتُكَ؟
مَا فِي الْحَقِيْبَةِ؟	مَا ثَمَنُ الْكِتَابِ؟
كَمْ قَلَمًا عِنْدَكَ؟	أَيُّ طَالِبٍ فِي الْفَصْلِ؟
هَلْ تِلْكَ سَيَّارَةٌ؟	أَيْنَ الْمُعَلِّمُ؟
كَيْفَ الْجَوُّ؟	أَ تِلْكَ نَافِذَةٌ مَفْتُوْحَةٌ؟

Answer	Question
زَيْدٌ فِي الْغُرْفَةِ	
ثَمَنُ الْكِتَابِ دُوْلَارَانِ	
اَلْكِتَابُ فِي الْحَقِيْبَةِ	
لَا، تِلْكَ دَرَّاجَةٌ	
اَلطَّالِبُ الْجَدِيْدُ فِي الْفَصْلِ	
اَلْمُعَلِّمُ فِي الْمَسْجِدِ	
عِنْدِيْ قَلَمٌ وَاحِدٌ	
بَيْتِيْ فِي الْمَدِيْنَةِ	
نَعَمْ، تِلْكَ نَافِذَةٌ مَفْتُوْحَةٌ	
اَلْجَوُّ بَارِدٌ	

2. Translate the ten questions and answers from the previous page into English.

Answer	Question

Exercise 16 – Lesson 28-29

Fill in the past tense conjugation tables for the given verb.

Person	Gender	Plural	Dual	Singular
Third	Masculine			كَتَبَ
Third	Feminine			
Second	Masculine			
Second	Feminine			
Third	Masculine & Feminine			

Person	Gender	Plural	Dual	Singular
Third	Masculine			عَلِمَ
Third	Feminine			
Second	Masculine			
Second	Feminine			
Third	Masculine & Feminine			

Person	Gender	Plural	Dual	Singular
Third	Masculine			نَصَحَ
Third	Feminine			
Second	Masculine			
Second	Feminine			
Third	Masculine & Feminine			

Person	Gender	Plural	Dual	Singular
Third	Masculine			حَسُنَ
Third	Feminine			
Second	Masculine			
Second	Feminine			
Third	Masculine & Feminine			

Exercise 17 – Lesson 30

1. Identify the verb (فِعْل), the subject (فَاعِل), and the object (مَفْعُوْل بِهِ) in the following sentences. If the فَاعِل is implicit within the verb, state the pronoun (e.g., he, she, we, they).

مَفْعُوْل بِهِ	فَاعِل	فِعْل	Sentence
			كَتَبَ زَيْدٌ الدَّرْسَ Zayd wrote the lesson
			أَكَلَ الْوَلَدُ التُّفَّاحَةَ The boy ate the apple
			شَرِبَ الطَّالِبُ الْمَاءَ The student drank the water
			فَتَحَ الرَّجُلُ الْبَابَ The man opened the door
			كَتَبَهُ الْأُسْتَاذُ The teacher wrote it
			أَكَلُوا الْخُبْزَ They (m) ate the bread
			قَرَأْتُ الْقِصَّةَ I read the story
			بَنَيْنَا الْمَسْجِدَ We built the Mosque
			سَاعَدَ الطِّفْلُ أُمَّهُ The child helped his mother

2. Complete each sentence by adding a suitable مَفْعُوْل بِهِ from the table below. Ensure to use the correct grammatical case and make the object definite where needed.

كِتَابٌ Book	قُرْاٰنٌ Qur'ān	مَاءٌ Water	طَعَامٌ Food
مَوْزٌ Banana	بَابٌ Door	ثَوْبٌ Garment	صُوْرَةٌ Picture
دَرْسٌ Lesson	حِصَانٌ Horse	يَدٌ Hand	بَكْرٌ Bakr

كَتَبَ الْمُعَلِّمُ _____
أَكَلَ زَيْدٌ _____
قَرَأَ الطَّالِبُ _____
حَفِظَ أَحْمَدُ _____
فَتَحَ الرَّجُلُ _____
رَكِبَ الْوَلَدُ _____
شَرِبَ عُمَرُ _____
لَبِسَ عَلِيٌّ _____
ضَرَبَ حَامِدٌ _____
غَسَلَتْ فَاطِمَةُ _____
رَسَمَ الطِّفْلُ _____
طَبَخَتِ الْأُمُّ _____

Exercise 18 – Lesson 31

Negate the following sentences using مَا النَّافِيَةُ and translate the negation to English. Follow the first example.

Negation	Affirmative
مَا سَمِعَ الطِّفْلُ الصَّوْتَ The child did not hear the voice	سَمِعَ الطِّفْلُ الصَّوْتَ The child heard the voice
	فَتَحَ الْحَارِسُ الْبَوَّابَةَ The guard opened the gate
	لَبِسَ الرَّجُلُ الْحِذَاءَ The man wore the shoe
	حَمَلَ الْفَلَّاحُ السَّلَّةَ The farmer carried the basket
	جَمَعَ الْمُعَلِّمُ الْأَوْرَاقَ The teacher collected the papers
	أَكَلْتُ التَّمْرَ I ate the dates
	كَتَبْنَا الرِّسَالَةَ We wrote the letter
	شَرِبْتِ الْعَصِيرَ You (f.s.) drank the juice
	طَبَخْتُمَا الْخُضْرَةَ Both of you cooked the vegetables
	دَخَلْنَ الْفَصْلَ They (f) entered the classroom
	فَتَحْتَ النَّافِذَةَ You (m.s.) opened the window

Exercise 19 – Lesson 33-34

1. Fill in the imperfect tense conjugation tables for the given verb.

Person	Gender	Plural	Dual	Singular
Third	Masculine			يَخْرُجُ
Third	Feminine			
Second	Masculine			
Second	Feminine			
Third	Masculine & Feminine			

Person	Gender	Plural	Dual	Singular
Third	Masculine			يَنْصَحُ
Third	Feminine			
Second	Masculine			
Second	Feminine			
Third	Masculine & Feminine			

Person	Gender	Plural	Dual	Singular
Third	Masculine			يَكْسِبُ
Third	Feminine			
Second	Masculine			
Second	Feminine			
Third	Masculine & Feminine			

Person	Gender	Plural	Dual	Singular
Third	Masculine			يَقْتُلُ
Third	Feminine			
Second	Masculine			
Second	Feminine			
Third	Masculine & Feminine			

2. Convert the following past tense verbs into their corresponding present/future tense verb. Ensure the conjugation remains the same as in the past tense. The بَاب is given to help you apply the rules you have previously learnt.

بَاب	اَلْفِعْلُ الْمَاضِيْ	اَلْفِعْلُ الْمُضَارِعُ
ضَرَبَ يَضْرِبُ	ضَرَبُوْا	يَضْرِبُوْنَ
ضَرَبَ يَضْرِبُ	كَسَرَ	
فَتَحَ يَفْتَحُ	ذَبَحَا	
نَصَرَ يَنْصُرُ	خَرَجَتْ	
نَصَرَ يَنْصُرُ	ذَكَرْنَا	
ضَرَبَ يَضْرِبُ	غَسَلْتَ	
سَمِعَ يَسْمَعُ	لَبِسْتُنَّ	
فَتَحَ يَفْتَحُ	نَصَحَتَا	
ضَرَبَ يَضْرِبُ	رَجَعْتُمَا	
نَصَرَ يَنْصُرُ	سَجَدْنَ	
كَرُمَ يَكْرُمُ	قَرُبْتِ	
ضَرَبَ يَضْرِبُ	غَلَبْتُنَّ	
نَصَرَ يَنْصُرُ	دَخَلْتُمْ	
سَمِعَ يَسْمَعُ	حَفِظْتُمَا	
ضَرَبَ يَضْرِبُ	صَبَرْتُ	
فَتَحَ يَفْتَحُ	رَكَعَتَا	
كَرُمَ يَكْرُمُ	حَسُنَ	
سَمِعَ يَسْمَعُ	شَرِبَا	
فَتَحَ يَفْتَحُ	قَطَعْنَا	
سَمِعَ يَسْمَعُ	فَهِمَ	

Exercise 20 – Lesson 35

1. Complete the imperative conjugation of the given verbs in each table.

Sit!	Number & Gender
اِجْلِسْ	Singular/Masculine
	Dual/Masculine & Feminine
	Plural Masculine
	Singular Feminine
	Dual/ Masculine & Feminine
	Plural Feminine

Sit!	Number & Gender
اُذْكُرْ	Singular/Masculine
	Dual/Masculine & Feminine
	Plural Masculine
	Singular Feminine
	Dual/ Masculine & Feminine
	Plural Feminine

2. Convert the following imperfect tense verbs into their corresponding imperative tense. Ensure the conjugation remains the same as in the imperfect tense. The بَاب is given to help you apply the rules you have previously learnt.

بَاب	اَلْفِعْلُ الْمُضَارِعُ	اَلْفِعْلُ الْأَمْرُ
ضَرَبَ يَضْرِبُ	تَضْرِبُوْنَ	اِضْرِبُوْا
ضَرَبَ يَضْرِبُ	تَغْسِلِيْنَ	
فَتَحَ يَفْتَحُ	تَمْدَحَانِ	
نَصَرَ يَنْصُرُ	تَدْرُسُوْنَ	
نَصَرَ يَنْصُرُ	تَمْكُثْنَ	
ضَرَبَ يَضْرِبُ	تَكْسِرُ (m)	
سَمِعَ يَسْمَعُ	تَرْحَمَانِ	
فَتَحَ يَفْتَحُ	تَنْصَحُوْنَ	
ضَرَبَ يَضْرِبُ	تَغْفِرِيْنَ	
نَصَرَ يَنْصُرُ	تَسْجُدَانِ	
كَرُمَ يَكْرُمُ	تَبْعُدْنَ	
ضَرَبَ يَضْرِبُ	تَعْرِفُ (f)	
نَصَرَ يَنْصُرُ	تَحْكُمَانِ	
سَمِعَ يَسْمَعُ	تَقْدِمُوْنَ	
ضَرَبَ يَضْرِبُ	تَكْشِفْنَ	
فَتَحَ يَفْتَحُ	تَبْحَثَانِ	
كَرُمَ يَكْرُمُ	تَحْسُنُوْنَ	
سَمِعَ يَسْمَعُ	تَشْرَبَانِ	
فَتَحَ يَفْتَحُ	تَرْفَعْنَ	
سَمِعَ يَسْمَعُ	تَحْمَدُوْنَ	

Exercise 21 – Lesson 36

1. Convert the following imperative verbs (أَمْر) into their negative imperative (نَهْي), keeping the same conjugation as the given imperative.

أَمْر	نَهْي
اِضْرِبْ	لَا تَضْرِبْ
اِجْلِسَا	
اِحْفَظْنَ	
اُكْرُمُوْا	
اِغْسِلْ	
اُسْجُدَا	
اِقْطَعُوْا	
اِفْهَمِيْ	
اِغْلِبْ	
اِرْفَعْنَ	
اِبْحَثُوْا	
اِمْسَحْ	
اِجْمَعُوْا	
اُقْعُدِيْ	
اُنْظُرَا	

Exercise 22 – Lesson 37

Read the adverbs below and label them as ظَرْفُ الزَّمَان (adverb of time) or ظَرْفُ الْمَكَان (adverb of place). Also translate each adverb into English. Refer back to Lesson 37 if you need help.

Type	Translation	Adverb
		صَبَاحٌ
		مَكَانٌ
		فَوْقُ
		بَيْنَ
		لَيْلٌ
		أَمَامُ
		تَحْتُ
		قَبْلُ
		حَيْثُ
		نَهَارٌ
		بُكْرَةٌ
		يَوْمٌ
		قَطُّ
		بَعْدُ
		قُدَّامُ

Exercise 23 – Lesson 38

1. Identify the type of each verb. Choose one category:

صَحِيْح			مُعْتَلّ		
سَالِم	مَهْمُوْز	مُضَعَّف	مِثَال	أَجْوَف	نَاقِص
			لَفِيْف مَفْرُوْق		لَفِيْف مَقْرُوْن

Verb Type	Verb
	كَتَبَ
	أَكَلَ
	مَدَّ
	دَخَلَ
	سَأَلَ
	رَدَّ
	قَرَأَ
	غَسَلَ
	وَقَفَ
	يَئِسَ
	قَالَ
	بَاعَ
	دَعَا
	رَمٰى
	وَقٰى
	طَوٰى
	بَدَأَ
	يَبِسَ
	عَدَّ
	وَلَدَ

2. Convert the following perfect tense verbs into their corresponding imperfect tense. Ensure the conjugation remains the same as in the imperfect tense. The بَاب is given to help you apply the rules you have previously learnt.

بَاب	اَلْفِعْلُ الْمَاضِيْ	اَلْفِعْلُ الْمُضَارِعُ
ضَرَبَ يَضْرِبُ (وَجَدَ)	وَجَدْتُمْ	تَجِدُوْنَ
ضَرَبَ يَضْرِبُ (وَعَدَ)	وَعَدَ	
فَتَحَ يَفْتَحُ (سَأَلَ)	سَأَلَتْ	
نَصَرَ يَنْصُرُ (قَالَ)	قُلْنَ	
نَصَرَ يَنْصُرُ (حَجَّ)	يَحُجُّوْنَ	
ضَرَبَ يَضْرِبُ (طَوٰى)	طَوَيَا	
سَمِعَ يَسْمَعُ (وَجِلَ)	وَجِلُوْا	
فَتَحَ يَفْتَحُ (وَهَبَ)	وَهَبَا	
ضَرَبَ يَضْرِبُ (رَمٰى)	رَمَيْتَ	
نَصَرَ يَنْصُرُ (قَامَ)	قُمْتُنَّ	
فَتَحَ يَفْتَحُ (قَرَأَ)	قَرَأْنَا	
ضَرَبَ يَضْرِبُ (وَقٰى)	وَقَتْ	
نَصَرَ يَنْصُرُ (رَدَّ)	رَدَدْنَا	
سَمِعَ يَسْمَعُ (رَضِيَ)	رَضِيْتُنَّ	
ضَرَبَ يَضْرِبُ (سَارَ)	سَارَتَا	
فَتَحَ يَفْتَحُ (سَعٰى)	سَعَيْتُمَا	
ضَرَبَ يَضْرِبُ (نَوٰى)	نَوَيْتُ	
سَمِعَ يَسْمَعُ (رَضِيَ)	رَضِيْنَ	
ضَرَبَ يَضْرِبُ (فَرَّ)	فَرَرْتَ	
سَمِعَ يَسْمَعُ (خَشِيَ)	خَشُوْا	

3. Complete اَلْأَمْرُ and اَلنَّهْيُ conjugation table for the following verbs, for the six second-person (اَلْمُخَاطَبُ) forms. Follow the example given.

وَجَدَ يَجِدُ	
اَلْأَمْرُ	اَلنَّهْيُ
جِدْ	لَا تَجِدْ
جِدَا	لَا تَجِدَا
جِدُوْا	لَا تَجِدُوْا
جِدِيْ	لَا تَجِدِيْ
جِدَا	لَا تَجِدَا
جِدْنَ	لَا تَجِدْنَ

فَرَّ يَفِرُّ	
اَلْأَمْرُ	اَلنَّهْيُ

مَلَأَ يَمْلَأُ	
اَلْأَمْرُ	اَلنَّهْيُ

قَالَ يَقُوْلُ	
اَلْأَمْرُ	اَلنَّهْيُ

بَاعَ يَبِيْعُ	
اَلْأَمْرُ	اَلنَّهْيُ

نَوٰى يَنْوِيْ	
اَلْأَمْرُ	اَلنَّهْيُ

Exercise 24 – Lesson 40

1. Add إِنَّ to the following nominal sentences and apply the rules you have learnt.

اَلْمُعَلِّمُ حَاضِرٌ	إِنَّ الْمُعَلِّمَ حَاضِرٌ
اَلْوَلَدُ طَوِيْلٌ	
اَلْكِتَابَانِ جَدِيْدَانِ	
اَلْبِنْتَانِ ذَكِيَّتَانِ	
اَلْبُيُوْتُ كَبِيْرَةٌ	
اَلْمُسْلِمُوْنَ صَادِقُوْنَ	
اَلْمُؤْمِنَاتُ صَابِرَاتٌ	

2. Identify the errors in the following sentences and rewrite them correctly.

إِنَّ الْمُسْلِمُوْنَ صَادِقَاتٌ	
لَيْتَ الْمُؤْمِنِيْنَ نَاصِحَاتٌ	
اَلْبَيْتُ كَبِيْرٌ لٰكِنَّ الْحَدِيْقَةُ صَغِيْرَةٌ	
لَعَلَّ الطَّالِبَانِ مُجْتَهِدِيْنَ	
كَأَنَّ الزَّيْدَ أَسَدٌ	
لَعَلَّ الْمُسْلِمَاتِ حَاضِرُوْنَ	
لَيْتَ الْوَلَدَ نَاجِحًا	
إِنَّ الْوَلَدَ الصَّغِيْرَ فِي الْمَدْرَسَةِ الْكَبِيْرِ	
لَيْتَ كِتَابَ الطَّالِبِ جَدِيْدٍ	
إِنَّ الطَّالِبَ الْمُجْتَهِدُ حَاضِرٌ	
لَعَلَّ طُلَّابُ الْمَدْرَسَةِ الْجَدِيْدَةِ مُجْتَهِدُوْنَ	

Exercise 25 – Lesson 41

1. Write whether each of the following nouns is:

اِسْم مَنْقُوص	اِسْم مَقْصُوْر	اِسْم مَمْدُوْد

صَحْرَاءُ	
كُبْرٰى	
اَلْقَاضِيْ	
مُسْتَشْفٰى	
عَصًا	
اَلْمُنَادِيْ	

2. Identify the إِعْرَاب of the اِسْم مَنْقُوْص، اِسْم مَقْصُوْر and اِسْم مَمْدُوْد in the following sentences.

Sentence	إِعْرَاب of the underlined word
جَاءَ الْقَاضِيْ إِلَى الْمَسْجِدِ The judge came to the Masjid	
إِنَّ الْمُحَامِيَ مُجْتَهِدٌ Indeed, the lawyer is hardworking	
جَلَسْتُ فِي مَقْهًى صَغِيْرٍ I sat in a small cafe	
زَارَ أَحْمَدُ مُسْتَشْفًى جَدِيْدًا Aḥmad visited a new hospital	
اَلْهُدٰى نُوْرٌ لِلْمُسْلِمِ Guidance is light for the Muslim	

Exercise 26 – Miscellaneous

1. Add the correct *ḥarakāt* on the last letter of the highlighted words.

I read the beneficial book	قَرَأْتُ الْكِتَاب الْمُفِيْد
Zayd read the book	قَرَأَ زَيْد الْكِتَاب
The tall boy is in the classroom	اَلْوَلَد الطَّوِيْل فِي الْفَصْل
The Muslims are praying in the Mosque	اَلْمُسْلِمُوْنَ يُصَلُّوْنَ فِي الْمَسْجِد
The new teacher is hardworking	اَلْمُعَلِّمُ الْجَدِيْد مُجْتَهِد
This fast car belongs to the principal	هٰذِهِ السَّيَّارَةُ السَّرِيْعَة لِلْمُدِيْر
The noble man came	جَاءَ الرَّجُل الْكَرِيْم
The hardworking student wrote the lesson	كَتَبَ الطَّالِب الْمُجْتَهِدُ الدَّرْس
The two students went to school	ذَهَبَ الطَّالِبَان إِلَى الْمَدْرَسَة
The hungry boy ate the restaurant's bread	أَكَلَ الْوَلَد الْجَائِعُ خُبْز الْمَطْعَم
I passed by big Mosques	مَرَرْتُ بِمَسَاجِد كَبِيْرَة
I saw Aḥmad in the school	رَأَيْتُ أَحْمَد فِي الْمَدْرَسَة
This is a just judge	هٰذَا قَاض عَادِل
The Muslims are praying in the Mosque	اَلْمُسْلِمُوْنَ يُصَلُّوْنَ فِي الْمَسْجِد
The intelligent woman found the key of the house	وَجَدَتِ الْمَرْأَةُ الْعَاقِلَة مِفْتَاح الْبَيْت
Verily this book is old	إِنَّ هٰذَا الْكِتَاب قَدِيْم
I went to Yusuf	ذَهَبْتُ إِلٰي يُوْسُف

2. Using the vocabulary list provided before the exercises, form 10 nominal sentences and 10 verbal sentences in Arabic.

Nominal Sentences
Verbal Sentences

3. Translate the following sentences to English. Use a dictionary if needed.

هٰذَا الْكِتَابُ الْمُفِيْدُ فِي الْمَكْتَبَةِ
ذَهَبَ الطُّلَّابُ الْمُجْتَهِدُوْنَ إِلَى الْمَدْرَسَةِ صَبَاحًا
رَجَعَتْ فَاطِمَةُ إِلٰى بَيْتِهَا مَسَاءً
مَرَرْتُ بِمَسَاجِدَ كَثِيْرَةٍ فِي الْمَدِيْنَةِ
إِنَّ اللهَ غَفُوْرٌ رَّحِيْمٌ
لَا تَكْتُبِ الْجَوَابَ فِي الدَّفْتَرِ
رُدَّ الْكِتَابَ إِلَى الْمَكْتَبَةِ
اِمْشِ إِلَى الْمَسْجِدِ
يَقِفُ الْوَلَدُ أَمَامَ الْمُعَلِّمِ
صُمْ يَوْمَ الْإِثْنَيْنِ
دَعَا الْإِمَامُ إِلَى الْخَيْرِ

Pathway to Arabic Grammar

This book offers a clear and structured introduction to the Arabic language by bringing together the essential principles of grammar and morphology. Drawing from the classical tradition, it simplifies complex discussions while preserving their depth, enabling students to build a strong foundation in the language of the Qur'ān. Some rare topics have been intentionally omitted to maintain clarity and focus.

Designed for learners of all levels, the book presents concise explanations and brief exercises for effective revision and concept reinforcement. Students are encouraged to further strengthen their skills through Lisān al-Qurʾān, which provides extensive practice and a comprehensive vocabulary list, making this work an ideal companion for serious students of Qur'ānic Arabic.

ISBN 978-0-646-72758-5
9 780646 727585 >